

SMARTHEAT INC.
Form PRER14A
August 18, 2014

UNITED STATES

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

SCHEDULE 14A

Proxy Statement Pursuant to Section 14(a) of
the Securities Exchange Act of 1934
(Amendment No. 1)

Filed by the Registrant
Filed by a Party other than the Registrant
Check the appropriate box:

- Preliminary Proxy Statement
- Confidential, for Use of the Commission Only (as permitted by Rule 14a-6(e)(2))
- Definitive Proxy Statement
- Definitive Additional Materials
- Soliciting Material Pursuant to Section 240.14a-12

SmartHeat Inc.
(Name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

(Name of Person(s) Filing Proxy Statement, if Other Than the Registrant)

Payment of Filing Fee (check the appropriate box):

- No fee required.
- Fee computed on table below per Exchange Act Rules 14a-6(i)(1) and 0-11.

- (1) Title of each class of securities to which transaction applies:

- (2) Aggregate number of securities to which transaction applies:

- (3) Per unit price or other underlying value of transaction computed pursuant to Exchange Act Rule 0-11 (set forth the amount on which the filing fee is calculated and state how it was determined):

- (4) Proposed maximum aggregate value of transaction:

- (5) Total fee paid:

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

- Fee paid previously with preliminary materials:
- Check box if any part of the fee is offset as provided by Exchange Act Rule 0-11(a)(2) and identify the filing for which the offsetting fee was paid previously. Identify the previous filing by registration statement number, or the Form or Schedule and the date of its filing.

(1) Amount Previously Paid:

(2) Form, Schedule or Registration Statement No.:

(3) Filing Party:

(4) Date Filed:

Copies of all communications to:

Robert Newman, Esq.
Newman & Morrison LLP
44 Wall Street, 12th Floor
New York, NY 10005
Tel. (212) 248-1001 Fax: (212) 202-6055

SMARTHEAT INC.
c/o Huajun Ai: Corporate Secretary
A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141

To Stockholders of SmartHeat Inc.:

You are cordially invited to attend the 2014 Annual Meeting of Stockholders of SmartHeat Inc., a Nevada corporation (the “Company”), commencing at 3:00 pm (China Time), on September 30, 2014 at the Boardroom at the Langham Place, 555 Shanghai Street, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China.

Details regarding admission to the meeting and the business to be conducted are described in the accompanying Notice of Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on September 30, 2014 and Proxy Statement. We have also made available a copy of our 2013 Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013, with this proxy statement. We encourage you to read our Annual Report. It includes our audited financial statements and provides information about our business.

Your vote is important. Whether or not you plan to attend the Annual Meeting, we hope you will vote as soon as possible. You may vote over the Internet, as well as by telephone, or, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, by mailing a proxy or voting instruction card. Please review the instructions on each of your voting options described in this proxy statement, as well as in the Notice you received in the mail.

Also, please let us know if you plan to attend our Annual Meeting by marking the appropriate box on the enclosed proxy card, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, or, if you vote by telephone or over the Internet, by indicating your plans when prompted.

Thank you for your continued interest and support.

Sincerely,

Mr. Oliver Bialowons
Director and President

SMARTHEAT INC.
c/o Huajun Ai: Corporate Secretary
A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141

NOTICE OF ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS
TO BE HELD ON SEPTEMBER 30, 2014

NOTICE IS HEREBY GIVEN that an Annual Meeting of the Stockholders of SmartHeat Inc., a Nevada corporation (the "Company"), will be held on September 30, 2014 at the Boardroom at the Langham Place, 555 Shanghai Street, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China, commencing at 3:00 pm (China Time) for the purposes of considering and acting upon the following proposals:

1. To elect five directors to the Board of Directors (the "Board") of Company to serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders or until their successors are elected and qualified;
2. To ratify the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as Company's independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014;
3. To authorize the sale of shares (the "Stock Sale") of certain subsidiaries of Company pursuant to the terms of a certain Equity Interest Purchase Agreement (the "EIPA") dated October 10, 2013 by and among Heat PHE, Inc. ("Heat PHE"), a Nevada corporation and wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, as Seller, and Hongjun Zhang, on behalf of all of several individuals ("Buyers") indentified in Buyers' Response to RFP submitted to the Company on September 10, 2013 and as revised and accepted by Company on September 23, 2013, as more fully described in the enclosed Proxy Statement;
4. To consider and vote upon one or more adjournments of the Annual Meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3;
5. To approve an amendment to the Credit and Security Agreement dated July 27, 2012, by and between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc. ("Northtech"), executed on July 14, 2014;
6. To transact such other business as may properly come before the Annual Meeting.

Any action on the items of business described above may be considered at the Annual Meeting at the time and on the date specified above or at any time and date to which the Annual Meeting may be properly adjourned or postponed.

You are entitled to vote only if you were a SmartHeat stockholder as of the close of business on August 15, 2014 (the "Record Date"). You are entitled to attend the Annual Meeting only if you were a SmartHeat stockholder as of the close of business on the Record Date or hold a valid proxy for the Annual Meeting. Since seating is limited, admission to the meeting will be on a first-come, first-served basis. You should be prepared to present photo identification for admittance. If you are not a stockholder of record but hold shares through a broker, bank, trustee, or nominee (i.e., in street name), you should provide proof of beneficial ownership as of the Record Date, such as your most recent account statement prior to the Record Date, a copy of the voting instruction card provided by your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee, or similar evidence of ownership.

If you do not provide photo identification or comply with the other procedures outlined above, you will not be admitted to the Annual Meeting. For security reasons, you and your bags will be subject to search prior to your admittance to the meeting. Please let us know if you plan to attend the meeting by marking the appropriate box on the enclosed proxy card if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, or, if you vote by telephone or over the Internet, by indicating your plans when prompted.

The Annual Meeting will begin promptly at 3:00 pm (China Time). Check-in will begin at 2:00 pm (China Time), and you should allow ample time for the check-in procedures.

Your vote is very important. Whether or not you plan to attend the Annual Meeting, we encourage you to read this proxy statement and submit your proxy or voting instructions as soon as possible. For specific instructions on how to vote your shares, please refer to the instructions on the Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials (Notice) you received in the mail, the section entitled Questions and Answers About the Proxy Materials and the Annual Meeting beginning on page 4 of this proxy statement or, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, your enclosed proxy card.

By Order of the Board of Directors,

Mr. Oliver Bialowons
Director and President

This notice of Annual Meeting and proxy statement and form of proxy are being distributed and made available on or about September 8, 2014.

PROXY STATEMENT

ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS
TO BE HELD ON SEPTEMBER 30, 2014

This Proxy Statement is furnished in connection with the solicitation of proxies by the Board of Directors of Smartheat Inc. (“Smartheat”, the “Company”, “us”, “our”, or “we”) for use at the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on September 30, 2014, at 3:00 p.m. local time at the Boardroom at the Langham Place, 555 Shanghai Street, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China (the “Annual Meeting”), including any adjournment or adjournments thereof, for the purposes set forth in the accompanying Notice of Meeting.

The address and telephone number of the Company are c/o the Corporate Secretary who maintains the Company’s corporate records at:

A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141
+86 (24) 2519-7699

We are providing you with this Proxy Statement together with the Company’s 2013 Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013.

The proxy statement and form of proxy are being distributed and made available on or about September 8, 2014.

The costs of preparing, assembling and mailing this Proxy Statement and the other material enclosed and all clerical and other expenses of solicitation will be paid by Smartheat. In addition to the solicitation of proxies by use of the mails, directors, officers and employees of Smartheat, without receiving additional compensation, may solicit proxies by personal interview, mail, e-mail, telephone, facsimile or other means of communication. Smartheat also will request brokerage houses and other custodians, nominees and fiduciaries to forward soliciting material to the beneficial owners of Common Stock held of record by such custodians and will reimburse such custodians for their expenses in forwarding soliciting materials.

Neither the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement, passed upon the merits or fairness of the transactions contemplated thereby or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of the disclosure in this Proxy Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

GENERAL INFORMATION – THE ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS

General

The enclosed proxy is solicited on behalf of the Board of Directors of Company for use at the Annual Meeting to be held at the Boardroom at the Langham Place, 555 Shanghai Street, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China on September 30, 2014.

The Company maintains its corporate records at the office of its Secretary located at A-1, 10, Street 7, Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone, Shenyang, China 110141, phone number +86 (24) 2519-7699.

This proxy statement and the accompanying proxy card will first made available on or about September 8, 2014 to all stockholders entitled to vote at the meeting.

Outstanding Stock and Voting Rights

Only stockholders of record at the close of business on August 15, 2014 (the “Record Date”) are entitled to notice of and to vote at the Annual Meeting. As of the Record Date, there were issued and outstanding 6,583,399 shares of the Company’s Common Stock, \$0.001 par value per share (the “Common Stock”), the Company’s only outstanding class of voting securities. Each share of Common Stock entitles the holder thereof to cast one vote on each matter submitted to a vote at the Annual Meeting.

Voting Procedures; Quorum

At the Annual Meeting, provided a quorum is present, the nominees for election as directors receiving the greatest number of votes cast, whether in person or represented by proxy and entitled to vote, up to the number of directors to be elected, which will be five, will be elected as directors of the Company.

Ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014 requires the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares present in person or represented by proxy and entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

The approval of the Stock Sale pursuant to the EIPA requires the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares of the Common Stock outstanding at the close of business on the Record Date.

The approval of necessary adjournments requires the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares of the Company Common Stock present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

Approval of the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement requires the affirmative vote of a majority of shares Common Stock present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

As of the Record Date, the directors and executive officers of the Company and their affiliates owned approximately 3.8 % of the shares entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

All other matters to come before the Annual Meeting will be decided by the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares of Common Stock present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote on the matter presented in person or by proxy, provided a quorum is present. A quorum is present if at least a majority of the shares of Common Stock outstanding as of the Record Date are present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting. It is currently anticipated that votes will be counted and certified by an Inspector of Election (the

“Inspector”) who is expected to be either an employee of the Company or its transfer agent. In accordance with Nevada law, abstentions will be treated as present for purposes of determining the presence of a quorum.

The Inspector will treat shares that are voted WITHHELD or ABSTAIN as being present and entitled to vote for purposes of determining the presence of a quorum but will not be treated as votes in favor of approving any matter submitted to the stockholders for a vote. When proxies are properly dated, executed and returned, the shares represented by such proxies will be voted at the Annual Meeting in accordance with the instructions of the stockholder. If no specific instructions are given on such proxies, the shares will be voted:

- FOR the election of each of the nominees for directors of the Company specified herein;
- For the Ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014;
- FOR the approval of the Stock Sale;
- FOR the approval of one or more adjournments of the Annual Meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3;
- FOR the approval of the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement and
- upon such other business as may properly come before the Annual Meeting or any adjournment or postponement thereof in the discretion of the proxies, but will not be voted other than as provided for the matters set forth above.

If you hold shares beneficially in street name and do not provide your broker with voting instructions, your shares may constitute “broker non-votes.” Broker non-votes occur on a matter when a broker is not permitted to vote on that matter without instructions from the beneficial owner and instructions are not given. These matters are referred to as “non-routine” matters. All of the matters scheduled to be voted on at the Annual Meeting are “non-routine,” except for the proposal to ratify the appointment of Goldman, Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as SmartHeat’s independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014. In tabulating the voting result for any particular proposal, shares that constitute broker non-votes are not considered votes cast on that proposal. Thus, broker non-votes will not affect the outcome of any matter being voted on at the meeting, assuming that a quorum is obtained.

Abstentions are considered votes cast and thus will have the same effect as votes “Against” each of the matters scheduled to be voted on at the Annual Meeting.

Proposal 1. Election of directors: Broker non-votes will be deemed not entitled to vote on the subject matter as to which the non-vote is indicated. Broker non-votes will have no effect on the vote on the election of directors, nor are there any abstentions in the election of directors; rather stockholders may vote “for” each nominee or withhold such vote.

Proposal 2. Ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014: Abstentions will have the same effect as a vote against this proposal. Broker are entitled to vote on this routine matter. Broker non-votes will be deemed not entitled to vote on the subject matter as to which the non-vote is indicated.

Proposal 3. Stock Sale: A properly executed ballot marked ABSTAIN with respect to this proposal will not be counted, although it will be counted for purposes of determining whether there is a quorum. Abstentions will have the same effect as a vote against this proposal. Broker non-votes will be deemed not entitled to vote on the subject matter as to which the non-vote is indicated. Broker non-votes also have the same effect as a vote against this proposal.

Proposal 4. Approval of Possible Adjournments of the Annual Meeting: A properly executed ballot marked ABSTAIN with respect to this proposal will not be counted, although it will be counted for purposes of determining whether there is a quorum. Since abstentions are not considered votes cast, they will have no effect on the outcome of this proposal. Brokers have discretion to vote on behalf of beneficial owners with respect to this proposal; as a result,

there will be no “broker non-votes” on this item.

7

Proposal 5. Approval of Approval of Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement: A properly executed ballot marked ABSTAIN with respect to this proposal will not be counted, although it will be counted for purposes of determining whether there is a quorum. Since abstentions are not considered votes cast, they will have no effect on the outcome of this proposal. Broker non-votes will be deemed not entitled to vote on the subject matter as to which the non-vote is indicated. Broker non-votes also have the same effect as a vote against this proposal.

Other than the relationship of Proposal 4 to Proposal 3 as described herein, none of the proposals is conditioned on the outcome of any other proposal.

Revocability of Proxies

The enclosed proxies will be voted in accordance with the instructions thereon. Unless otherwise stated, all shares represented by such proxy will be voted as instructed. Any proxy given pursuant to this solicitation may be revoked by the person giving it at any time before its use by delivering to the Secretary of the Company a written notice of revocation or a duly executed proxy bearing a later date. Any stockholder who has executed a proxy but is present at the Annual Meeting, and who wishes to vote in person, may do so by revoking his or her proxy as described in the preceding sentence. Shares represented by valid proxies in the form enclosed, received in time for use at the Annual Meeting and not revoked at or prior to the Annual Meeting, will be voted at the Annual Meeting.

The entire cost of soliciting proxies, including the costs of preparing, assembling, printing and mailing this proxy statement, the proxy and any additional soliciting material furnished to stockholders, will be borne by the Company. Arrangements will be made with brokerage houses, banks and other custodians, nominees and fiduciaries to send proxies and proxy materials to the beneficial owners of stock, and the Company expects to reimburse such persons for their reasonable out-of-pocket expenses. Proxies may also be solicited by directors, officers or employees of the Company in person or by telephone, telegram or other means. No additional compensation will be paid to such individuals for these services.

Solicitation of Proxies

The Company will bear the entire cost of soliciting proxies from its stockholders. In addition to solicitation of proxies by mail, the Company will request that banks, brokers, and other record holders send proxies and proxy material to the beneficial owners of the Company Common Stock and secure their voting instructions. The Company will reimburse the record holders for their reasonable expenses in taking those actions. If necessary, the Company may use several of its regular employees, who will not be specially compensated, to solicit proxies from the Company stockholders, either personally or by telephone, facsimile, letter or other electronic means.

Voting

Each stockholder is entitled to one vote for each share held on the close of business on the Record Date, on each matter properly submitted for the vote of stockholders at the Annual Meeting. The right to vote is exercisable, in person or by properly executed proxy as described further below.

If you are a stockholder of record as of the Record Date, you may vote in person at the Annual Meeting or vote by proxy using the proxy card. Whether or not you plan to attend the Annual Meeting, the Company urges you to vote by proxy to ensure your vote is counted. You may still attend the Annual Meeting and vote in person if you have already voted by proxy. To vote in person, you may come to the Annual Meeting and the Company will give you a ballot when you arrive. To vote using the proxy card, simply complete, sign and date the proxy card (which is enclosed if you received this proxy statement by mail or that you may request or that the Company may elect to deliver at a later time), and return it promptly in the envelope provided. If you return your signed proxy card to the Company before

the Annual Meeting, the Company will vote your shares as you direct.

For Shares Registered in the Name of a Broker or Bank

Most beneficial owners whose stock is held in street name receive instructions for granting proxies from their banks, brokers or other agents, rather than the Company's proxy card. If your shares are held in an account with a broker or bank please follow the instructions provided by such broker or bank.

MATTERS BEING SUBMITTED TO A VOTE OF SMARTHEAT'S STOCKHOLDERS

Proposal 1: Election of directors

At this year's Annual Meeting, five nominees will be elected as directors, which number will constitute the entire Board of Directors. Each director will be elected to a one-year term and will hold office until the 2015 Annual Meeting and until his successor has been duly elected and qualified or until his earlier death, resignation or removal. The Board of Directors currently consists of five members, each of whom are standing for re-election at the Annual Meeting. Each of the nominees to the Board of Directors has been recommended by the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors has nominated Oliver Bialowons, Xin Li, Kenneth Scipta, Weiguo Wang and Qingtai Kong as directors.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS THAT STOCKHOLDERS VOTE FOR THE ELECTION OF EACH OF THE NOMINEES SPECIFIED HEREIN.

Proposal 2: Ratification of appointment of independent registered public accounting firm Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP.

At this year's Annual Meeting, Company stockholders will be asked to ratify the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as the independent registered public accounting firm to audit our consolidated financial statement for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE FOR THE RATIFICATION OF THE APPOINTMENT OF GOLDMAN KURLAND AND MOHIDIN, LLP AS OUR INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2014.

Proposal 3: Stock Sale

At this year's Annual Meeting, Company stockholders will be asked to approve the Stock Sale.

The terms of, reasons for and other aspects of the Stock Sale are described in detail in the other sections in this proxy statement.

You should note that the Company is seeking approval of the Stock Sale because such Stock Sale might be deemed under Nevada law to be a sale of substantially all of the Company's assets. If stockholders do not approve the Stock Sale, or if the Stock Sale does not otherwise close, the Company may continue to explore additional alternatives to the Stock Sale or resubmit the Stock Sale in the same or revised form to the stockholders for approval at a future date.

The Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajun Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajun Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc. See the section captioned "Interest of Certain Persons in the Stock Sale".

THE COMPANY'S BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS THAT COMPANY STOCKHOLDERS VOTE FOR PROPOSAL 3 TO APPROVE THE STOCK SALE.

Proposal 4: Approval of Possible Adjournments of the Annual Meeting

If the Company fails to receive a sufficient number of votes to approve Proposal 3 at the Annual Meeting, the Company may propose to adjourn the Annual Meeting on one or more occasions, each for a period of not more than 30 days, for the purpose of soliciting additional proxies to approve Proposal 3. The Company currently does not intend to propose adjournment at the Annual Meeting if there are sufficient votes to approve Proposal 3.

You should note that in the absence of a quorum of shares present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting, the bylaws of the Company, as amended (the “Bylaws”) provide that the chairperson of the meeting may adjourn the meeting. The presentation of this Proposal 4 to the stockholders of the Company is not intended to, and does not, prevent the chairperson of the meeting from adjourning the Annual Meeting in the manner set forth in the Company’s Bylaws under such circumstances. In addition, this Proposal 4 does not prevent the meeting from otherwise being adjourned or postponed in accordance with the requirements of the Nevada Revised Statutes, our Articles of Incorporation or the Bylaws of the Company.

THE COMPANY’S BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS THAT COMPANY STOCKHOLDERS VOTE FOR PROPOSAL 4 TO ADJOURN THE ANNUAL MEETING, IF NECESSARY, TO SOLICIT ADDITIONAL PROXIES IF THERE ARE NOT SUFFICIENT VOTES IN FAVOR OF PROPOSAL 3.

Proposal 5: Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement

At this year’s Annual Meeting, Company stockholders will be asked to approve the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement.

The terms of, reasons for and other aspects of the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement are described in detail in the other sections in this proxy statement.

You should note that Company is seeking approval under the terms of the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement, which, if not approved, will constitute an event of default.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE “FOR” THE APPROVAL OF THE AMENDMENT TO THE CREDIT AGREEMENT.

SUMMARY OF THE PROXY STATEMENT

This summary highlights selected information from this proxy statement and may not contain all of the information that is important to you. You should read carefully this entire proxy statement and the documents referred to in this proxy statement for a more complete description of the matters on which you are being asked to vote. A copy of the EIPA is attached as Annex A to this proxy statement. You are encouraged to read the EIPA as it is the legal document that governs the Stock Sale. This summary is qualified in its entirety by the EIPA and the more detailed information appearing elsewhere in this document. This summary includes page references in parentheses to direct you to a more complete description of the topics presented in this summary.

The Company

SmartHeat, Inc.

We are a U.S. holding company with no material assets other than the ownership interests through our subsidiaries Heat PHE and Heat HP of our foreign subsidiaries that design, manufacture and sell plate heating equipment (PHEs) and heat pumps (HPs) in the People’s Republic of China (“PRC”) and Germany.

Heat PHE

Heat PHE was formed in Nevada on August 23, 2013 and is our wholly owned subsidiary and, at that time, we entered into an assignment agreement (“PHE Assignment Agreement”) with Heat PHE to reorganize the business into a separate segment holding those subsidiaries that operated in the plate heating equipment, meters and related products.

Under the PHE Assignment Agreement, the Company agreed to transfer, and in the case of indirectly owned subsidiaries, cause to be transferred, to Heat PHE the following subsidiaries of the Company:

SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd.
SanDeKe Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.
Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd.

Our Heat PHE subsidiaries contain approximately 92 % of the assets and approximately 90 % of the liabilities of the Company, excluding the inter-segment transactions.

A PHE is a device that transfers heat from one fluid to another fluid across large metal plates. PHE products are used in the industrial, residential and commercial sectors to make energy use more efficient and to reduce pollution by reducing the need for coal fired boilers. The subsidiaries of Heat PHE design, manufacture, sell and service PHEs, PHE Units, which combine PHEs with various pumps, temperature sensors, valves and automated control systems, heat meters and heat pumps for use in commercial and residential buildings. They also design, manufacture and sell spiral heat exchangers and tube heat exchangers. Their products are used in a variety of industrial processes where heat transfer is required. Applications include energy conversion for heating, ventilation and air conditioning, and industrial use in petroleum refining, petrochemicals, metallurgy, food and beverage and chemical processing. The subsidiaries of Heat PHE sell their products under the SmartHeat and Taiyu brand names and also sell PHEs under the Sondex brand name as an authorized dealer of Sondex PHEs in China.

Heat HP

Our wholly owned subsidiary Heat HP holds those subsidiaries that manufacture and distribute heat pumps and related products.

Heat HP was formed in Nevada on August 23, 2013 and is our wholly owned subsidiary and, at that time, we entered into an assignment agreement (“HP Assignment Agreement”) with Heat HP to reorganize the business into a separate segment holding those subsidiaries that operated in the heat pump related products. Under the HP Assignment Agreement, the Company agreed to transfer, and in the case of indirectly owned subsidiaries, cause to be transferred, to Heat HP the following subsidiaries of the Company:

SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH
SmartHeat (Shanghai) Trading Co., Ltd.
Beijing SmartHeat Jinhui Energy Technology Co., Ltd.

Our Heat HP subsidiaries contain approximately 7 % of the assets and approximately 5 % of the liabilities of the Company, excluding the inter-segment transactions.

Our heat pump systems provide heating, cooling and hot water for residential and commercial buildings and process heat for industrial applications by moving heat between two locations using small amounts of electricity. In a typical system, heat pumps draw heat from outside air or ground to warm the inside of a home or office building. Many heat pumps have reversible cycles, too, using the same system to cool the inside of a building by transferring heat outside. Heat pumps replace conventional energy sources such as oil, gas and coal with the energy stored in water, soil and air or heat recovered from wastewater or exhaust air. By transferring heat between locations, rather than burning fuel to create a heat source, heat pumps are extremely efficient energy transfer systems. Commercial users install heat pump systems not only to reduce energy consumption but also carbon dioxide, or CO₂, emissions, a trend that is encouraged by policymakers in China. The advantages of heat pumps in terms of energy efficiency, operating cost, CO₂ emission reduction and their ability to provide heating and cooling in one machine has made them the leading energy source for new buildings in Germany and Austria, and has replaced conventional fossil fuel based technology in these countries to a large degree. As the PRC government continues to focus on emissions reduction and energy conservation, we believe there are opportunities for incremental growth in the rapidly growing heat pump market in China. We also anticipate expanding sales of heat pumps manufactured in China under EU design standards to the European market. Heat pumps accounted for 2% and 8% of our sales in 2013 and 2012, respectively.

If the Stock Sale is consummated and the Company exercises its option to cause the Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% of the Target Companies, we will continue to own Heat PHE and Heat HP and, indirectly, their respective subsidiaries:

Subsidiaries of Heat HP Inc.:

SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH
SmartHeat (Shanghai) Trading Co., Ltd.
Beijing SmartHeat Jinhui Energy Technology Co., Ltd.

Subsidiaries of Heat PHE Inc.:

SanDeKe Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co., Ltd.

Seller:

Heat PHE Inc.
A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141
+86 (24) 2519-7699

Buyers:

The Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajuan Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc.

Principal Provisions of the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement (page 45 and Annex A)

Under the terms of the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement (“EIPA”), the Buyers agreed to purchase 40% of Heat PHE’s equity interests in the following PHE segment subsidiaries: SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy; SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.; SmartHeat (Shenyang Energy Equipment) Co. Ltd.; Hohot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd.; and Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (collectively, the “Target Companies”). The purchase price was RMB 5,000,000, which was paid at the closing on December 30, 2013. The Company retained an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Target Companies from Buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which expired unexercised on February 28, 2014. Buyers have an option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in Target Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000 which was exercised on March 27, 2014 prior to its expiration. As one of the closing conditions to the sale of the additional 40% equity interest in Target Companies, Company must receive the approval of its stockholders representing a majority of its outstanding shares. In the event such approval is not obtained, Buyers may elect to terminate the EIPA. If our stockholders approve the sale, Company has the option to require Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000.

Following the Stock Sale, Company’s Board of Directors plans to explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include expansion of our heat pump business in the United States, Europe and China, future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital. It is unlikely, however, that the Company will make a distribution of cash to our stockholders.

A copy of the EIPA, as amended, is attached as Annex A to this proxy statement. The description of the EIPA herein is qualified in its entirety by reference to the EIPA. We encourage you to read the EIPA in its entirety.

Reasons for the Stock Sale (page 42)

The Company's Board of Directors determined that the terms of the EIPA and the transactions contemplated by the EIPA, including without limitation, the sale of the additional 40% of its equity interest in Target Companies are advisable and in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders, and has approved the Stock Sale and the transactions contemplated by the EIPA.

Both positive and negative factors, together with the background of the transaction set forth below, comprise the Board of Directors' material considerations in entering into the EIPA. For a description of the factors that the Board of Directors considered in entering into the EIPA, please see the discussion below under the heading "The Sale of Stock by the Company."

Use of Proceeds (page 44)

A subsidiary of Heat PHE, and not the Company's stockholders, will receive all of the net proceeds from the Stock Sale. Following the Stock Sale, the Company's Board of Directors plans to explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include expansion of our heat pump business in the United States, Europe and China future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital. It is unlikely, however, that the Company will make a distribution of cash to our stockholders.

Although the Board of Directors and management have had preliminary discussions regarding potential uses of our capital following the Stock Sale, the Board of Directors intends to continue to review anticipated liabilities and potential strategic uses of capital in connection with the continuation of the Company as a going concern. Accordingly, we cannot specify with certainty the amount of net proceeds, if any, we will use for any particular use or the timing in respect thereof. Consequently, you should not vote in favor of the Stock Sale based upon any assumptions regarding the amount or timing of any potential usages of capital or distributions to stockholders.

Recommendations to the Company's Stockholders (page 44)

The Company's Board of Directors has determined that the sale of substantially all of the Company's assets pursuant to the Stock Sale is advisable in the best interests of the Company and the Company's stockholders. The Company's Board of Directors has approved the Stock Sale, and recommends that the stockholders of the Company vote in favor of the EIPA and the transactions contemplated by the EIPA, and in favor of any necessary adjournments. Certain of the Company's former officers, who are significant stockholders, have interests in the Stock Sale that are different from the other holders of the shares of the Company's Common Stock. See the section captioned "Interests of Certain Persons in the Stock Sale".

Conditions to the Stock Sale (page 45)

The obligations of each of Buyers and Heat PHE to complete the Stock Sale are subject to the satisfaction of specified conditions set forth in the EIPA, including the approval of the EIPA and related agreements by Company's stockholders holding a majority of the outstanding shares of Common Stock. For a description of the closing conditions, please see the discussion below under the headings "Principal Provisions of the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement."

Interests of Certain Persons in the Stock Sale (page 46)

Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajun Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajun Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc.

Risk Factors (page 14)

In evaluating the Stock Sale, in addition to the other information contained in this proxy statement, you should carefully consider the risk factors relating to the Stock Sale and our Company discussed herein.

RISK FACTORS

When you decide whether to vote for approval of the Stock Sale, you should consider the following factors in conjunction with the other information included in this proxy statement.

If the Stock Sale is not consummated, we will continue to seek other financing alternatives and operate for as long as possible.

If the Stock Sale is not consummated we will continue to seek additional financing option and operate for as long as possible. If we are unable to find alternatives to finance and expand our PHE segment and we continue to operate at a loss we will need to consider options in bankruptcy as we will have not enough operating cash to continue our business.

We cannot be sure if or when the Stock Sale will be completed.

The consummation of the Stock Sale is subject to the satisfaction or waiver of various conditions, including the authorization of the Stock Sale by our stockholders and receipt of a Fairness Opinion. We cannot guarantee that the closing conditions set forth in the EIPA will be satisfied. If we are unable to satisfy the closing conditions in the Buyer's favor or if other mutual closing conditions are not satisfied, the Buyer will not be obligated to complete the Asset Sale.

If the Stock Sale is not completed, our board of directors, in discharging its fiduciary obligations to our stockholders, will evaluate other strategic alternatives that may be available. Such other strategic alternatives may not be as favorable to our stockholders as the Stock Sale. Any future sale of substantially all of our assets or other transactions may be subject to further stockholder approval.

While the Stock Sale is pending, it creates uncertainty about our future that could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

While the Stock Sale is pending, it creates uncertainty about our future. As a result of this uncertainty, our current or potential business partners may decide to delay, defer or cancel entering into new business arrangements with us pending completion or termination of the Asset Sale. In addition, while the Stock Sale is pending, we are subject to a number of risks, including:

- the diversion of management and employee attention from our day-to-day business;
- the potential disruption to business partners and other service providers; and
- the possible inability to respond effectively to competitive pressures, industry developments and future opportunities.

The occurrence of any of these events individually or in combination could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operation.

In addition, pending the completion of the Stock Sale, we may be unable to attract and retain key personnel and our management's focus and attention and employee resources may be diverted from operational matters during the pendency of the Asset Sale.

In the event that the Stock Sale is not completed, the announcement of the termination of the EIPA may also adversely affect the trading price of our Common Stock, our business or our relationships with lenders, customers, suppliers and employees.

Our former officers and current executive officers and managers of the Company's subsidiaries have interests in the Stock Sale other than, or in addition to, the interests of our stockholders generally.

The Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajun Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajun Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc. Our board of directors was aware of these interests and considered them, among other matters, in approving the EIPA.

We will continue to incur the expenses of complying with public company reporting requirements following the closing of the Stock Sale.

After the Stock Sale, we will continue to be required to comply with the applicable reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), even though compliance with such reporting requirements is economically burdensome.

If the Stock Sale is not completed and the EIPA is terminated, there may not be any other offers from potential acquirers.

If the Stock Sale is not completed and the EIPA is terminated, we may seek another purchaser for our assets. There can be no assurances that we would be able to enter into meaningful discussions or to otherwise complete any transaction with any other party who may have an interest in purchasing our assets on terms acceptable to us. Additionally, the inability to complete the Stock Sale could make potential acquirers more reluctant to engage in a transaction with us.

We may be exposed to litigation related to the Stock Sale from the holders of our Common Stock.

Transactions such as the Stock Sale are often subject to lawsuits by stockholders. Because the holders of our Common Stock will not receive any consideration from the Stock Sale, it is possible that they may sue the Company or its board of directors.

We will incur significant expenses in connection with the Stock Sale.

We expect to pay legal fees, accounting fees and proxy filing costs whether or not the Stock Sale closes. Any significant expenses or payment obligations incurred by us in connection with the Stock Sale could adversely affect our financial condition and cash position.

The Company's stockholders will not receive any of the proceeds of the Stock Sale.

If the Stock Sale is consummated, the cash purchase price will be paid directly to a subsidiary of Heat PHE located in China. None of the net proceeds of the purchase price will be received by the Company's stockholders, unless the

Board of Directors ultimately proposes a distribution to the stockholders.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ABOUT THE PROXY MATERIALS AND THE ANNUAL MEETING

Q: Why am I receiving these materials?

A: Our Board of Directors has made these materials available to you on the Internet, or, upon your request, has delivered printed proxy materials to you, in connection with the solicitation of proxies for use at SmartHeat's 2013 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, which will take place on September 30, 2014, at the Boardroom at the Langham Place, 555 Shanghai Street, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China, at 3:00 pm (China Time). As a stockholder, you are invited to attend the Annual Meeting and are requested to vote on the items of business described in this proxy statement.

Q: What information is contained in this proxy statement?

A: The information in this proxy statement relates to the proposals to be voted on at the Annual Meeting, the voting process, the compensation of our directors and most highly paid executive officers, corporate governance, and certain other required information.

Q: What items of business will be voted on at the Annual Meeting?

A: The items of business scheduled to be voted on at the Annual Meeting are:

1. To elect five directors to the Board of Directors (the "Board") of the Company to serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders or until their successors are elected and qualified;
2. To ratify the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014;
3. To authorize the Stock Sale, which might be deemed under Nevada law to be the sale of substantially all the assets of the Company;
4. To consider and vote upon one or more adjournments of the Annual Meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3;
5. To approve an amendment to the Credit and Security Agreement, dated July 27, 2012, by and between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc. ("Northtech"), executed on July 14, 2014; and
6. To transact such other business as may properly come before the Annual Meeting.

Q: How does the Board of Directors recommend that I vote?

A: Our Board of Directors recommends that you vote your shares "For" each of the 5 proposals scheduled to be voted upon at the Annual Meeting.

Q: What shares can I vote?

A: Each share of SmartHeat Common Stock issued and outstanding as of the close of business on the Record Date for the 2014 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is entitled to be voted on all items being voted on at the Annual Meeting. You may vote all shares owned by you as of the Record Date, including (1) shares held directly in your name as the stockholder of record, and (2) shares held for you as the beneficial owner in street name through a broker, bank, trustee, or other nominee. On the Record Date we had 6,583,399 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding.

Q: How many votes am I entitled to per share?

A: Each holder is entitled to one vote for each share of Common Stock held as of the Record Date.

Q: What is the difference between holding shares as a stockholder of record and as a beneficial owner?

A: Most SmartHeat stockholders hold their shares as a beneficial owner through a broker or other nominee rather than directly in their own name. As summarized below, there are some distinctions between shares held of record and those owned beneficially.

Stockholder of Record

If your shares are registered directly in your name with our transfer agent, Interwest Transfer Company, Inc., you are considered, with respect to those shares, the stockholder of record, and the Notice was sent directly to you by SmartHeat. As the stockholder of record, you have the right to grant your voting proxy directly to SmartHeat or to vote in person at the Annual Meeting. If you requested to receive printed proxy materials, SmartHeat has enclosed or sent a proxy card for you to use. You may also vote on the Internet or by telephone, as described in the Notice and below under the heading “How can I vote my shares without attending the Annual Meeting?”

Beneficial Owner

If your shares are held in an account at a brokerage firm, bank, broker-dealer, trust, or other similar organization, like the vast majority of our stockholders, you are considered the beneficial owner of shares held in street name, and the Notice was forwarded to you by that organization. As the beneficial owner, you have the right to direct your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee how to vote your shares, and you are also invited to attend the Annual Meeting.

Since a beneficial owner is not the stockholder of record, you may not vote your shares in person at the Annual Meeting unless you obtain a “legal proxy” from the broker, bank, trustee, or nominee that holds your shares giving you the right to vote the shares at the meeting. If you do not wish to vote in person or you will not be attending the Annual Meeting, you may vote by proxy. You may vote by proxy over the Internet or by telephone, as described in the Notice and below under the heading “How can I vote my shares without attending the Annual Meeting?”

Q: How can I contact SmartHeat’s transfer agent?

A: Contact our transfer agent by either writing to Interwest Transfer Company, Inc., 1981 Murray Holladay Road, Suite 100, Salt Lake City, UT 84117, or by telephoning 801-272-9294.

Q: How can I attend the Annual Meeting?

A: You are entitled to attend the Annual Meeting only if you were a SmartHeat stockholder as of the Record Date or you hold a valid proxy for the Annual Meeting. Since seating is limited, admission to the meeting will be on a

first-come, first-served basis. You must present photo identification for admittance. If you are not a stockholder of record but hold shares as a beneficial owner in street name, you must also provide proof of beneficial ownership as of the Record Date, such as your most recent account statement prior to the Record Date, a copy of the voting instruction card provided by your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee, or other similar evidence of ownership.

If you do not provide photo identification or comply with the other procedures outlined above, you will not be admitted to the Annual Meeting. For security reasons, you and your bags will be subject to search prior to your admittance to the meeting.

Please let us know if you plan to attend the meeting by marking the appropriate box on the enclosed proxy card, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, or, if you vote by telephone or Internet, by indicating your plans when prompted.

The meeting will begin promptly at 3:00 pm (Local time). Check-in will begin at 2:45 pm (Local time), and you should allow ample time for the check-in procedures.

Q: How can I vote my shares in person at the Annual Meeting?

A: Shares held in your name as the stockholder of record may be voted by you in person at the Annual Meeting. Shares held beneficially in street name may be voted by you in person at the Annual Meeting only if you obtain a legal proxy from the broker, bank, trustee, or nominee that holds your shares giving you the right to vote the shares. Even if you plan to attend the Annual Meeting, we recommend that you also submit your proxy or voting instructions as described below so that your vote will be counted if you later decide not to attend the meeting.

Q: How can I vote my shares without attending the Annual Meeting?

A: Whether you hold shares directly as the stockholder of record or beneficially in street name, you may direct how your shares are voted without attending the Annual Meeting. If you are a stockholder of record, you may vote by proxy. You can vote by proxy over the Internet by following the instructions provided in the Notice, or, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, you can also vote by mail or telephone pursuant to instructions provided on the proxy card. If you hold shares beneficially in street name, you may also vote by proxy over the Internet by following the instructions provided in the Notice, or, if you requested to receive printed proxy materials, you can also vote by telephone or mail by following the voting instruction card provided to you by your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee.

Q: Can I change my vote or revoke my proxy?

A: You may change your vote at any time prior to the taking of the vote at the Annual Meeting. If you are the stockholder of record, you may change your vote by (1) granting a new proxy bearing a later date (which automatically revokes the earlier proxy) using any of the methods described above (and until the applicable deadline for each method), (2) providing a written notice of revocation to SmartHeat's Corporate Secretary at A-1, 10, Street 7, Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone, Shenyang China 110141, prior to your shares being voted, or (3) attending the Annual Meeting and voting in person. Attendance at the meeting will not cause your previously granted proxy to be revoked unless you specifically so request. For shares you hold beneficially in street name, you may change your vote by submitting new voting instructions to your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee following the instructions they provided, or, if you have obtained a legal proxy from your broker, bank, trustee, or nominee giving you the right to vote your shares, by attending the Annual Meeting and voting in person.

Q: Is my vote confidential?

A: Proxy instructions, ballots, and voting tabulations that identify individual stockholders are handled in a manner that protects your voting privacy. Your vote will not be disclosed either within SmartHeat or to third parties, except: (1) as necessary to meet applicable legal requirements, (2) to allow for the tabulation of votes and certification of the vote, and (3) to facilitate a successful proxy solicitation. Occasionally, stockholders provide on their proxy card written comments, which are then forwarded to SmartHeat management.

Q: How many shares must be present or represented to conduct business at the Annual Meeting?

A: The quorum requirement for holding the Annual Meeting and transacting business is majority of the voting power of the issued and outstanding Common Stock of SmartHeat as of the Record Date must be present in person or represented by proxy. Both abstentions and broker non-votes (described below) are counted for the purpose of determining the presence of a quorum.

Q: How are votes counted?

A: In the election of directors (proposal number 1), you may vote “For” all or some of the nominees or your vote may be “Withheld” with respect to one or more of the nominees.

For the other items of business, you may vote “For,” “Against,” or “Abstain.” If you elect to “Abstain,” the abstention has the same effect as a vote “Against.”

If you provide specific instructions with regard to certain items, your shares will be voted as you instruct on such items. If no instructions are indicated, the shares will be voted as recommended by the Board of Directors.

Q: What is the voting requirement to approve each of the proposals?

A: In the election of directors, the five persons receiving the highest number of affirmative “For” votes at the Annual Meeting will be elected.

For Proposals 2, 4 and 5, the affirmative “For” vote of a majority of those shares present in person or represented by proxy and entitled to vote on them at the Annual Meeting is required for approval.

For Proposal 3, the affirmative vote of a majority of share outstanding required. If you hold shares beneficially in street name and do not provide your broker with voting instructions, your shares may constitute “broker non-votes.” Broker non-votes occur on a matter when a broker is not permitted to vote on that matter without instructions from the beneficial owner and instructions are not given. These matters are referred to as “non-routine” matters. All of the matters scheduled to be voted on at the Annual Meeting are “non-routine,” except for the proposal to ratify the appointment of Goldman, Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as SmartHeat’s independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014. In tabulating the voting result for any particular proposal, shares that constitute broker non-votes are not considered votes cast on that proposal. Thus, broker non-votes will not affect the outcome of any matter being voted on at the meeting, assuming that a quorum is obtained.

Abstentions are considered votes cast and thus will have the same effect as votes “Against” each of the matters scheduled to be voted on at the Annual Meeting.

Please note that the rules regarding how brokers may vote your shares have changed. Brokers may no longer vote your shares on the election of directors in the absence of your specific instructions as to how to vote so we encourage you to provide instructions to your broker regarding the voting of your shares.

Q: Is cumulative voting permitted for the election of directors?

A: No. You may not cumulate your votes for the election of directors.

Q: What happens if additional matters are presented at the Annual Meeting?

A: Other than the four items of business described in this proxy statement, we are not aware of any other business to be acted upon at the Annual Meeting. If you grant a proxy, the person named as proxy holder, Oliver Bialowons, will have the discretion to vote your shares on any additional matters properly presented for a vote at the meeting. If for any reason any of the nominees is not available as a candidate for director, the persons named as proxy holders will vote your proxy for such other candidate or candidates as may be nominated by the Board of Directors.

Q: Who will serve as inspector of elections?

A: The inspector of elections will be either the transfer agent or an officer of the Company.

Q: Who will bear the cost of soliciting votes for the Annual Meeting?

A: SmartHeat will pay the entire cost of preparing, assembling, printing, mailing, and distributing these proxy materials and soliciting votes. If you choose to access the proxy materials and/or vote over the Internet, you are responsible for Internet access charges you may incur. If you choose to vote by telephone, you are responsible for telephone charges you may incur. In addition to the mailing of these proxy materials, the solicitation of proxies or votes may be made in person, by telephone, or by electronic communication by our directors, officers, and personnel, who will not receive any additional compensation for such solicitation activities.

Q: Where can I find the voting results of the Annual Meeting?

A: We will disclose voting results on a Form 8-K filed with the SEC within four business days after the Annual Meeting, which will also be available on our website.

Q: What is the deadline to propose actions for consideration at next year's Annual Meeting of Stockholders or to nominate individuals to serve as directors?

A: Stockholder Proposals: Stockholders may present proper proposals for inclusion in our proxy statement and for consideration at the next annual meeting of stockholders by submitting their proposals in writing to SmartHeat's Corporate Secretary in a timely manner. For a stockholder proposal to be considered for inclusion in our proxy statement for our 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, the Corporate Secretary of SmartHeat must receive the written proposal at our principal executive offices no later than Friday, May 1, 2015; provided, however, that in the event that we hold our 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders more than 30 days before or after the one-year anniversary date of the 2014 Annual Meeting, we will disclose the new deadline by which stockholders proposals must be received under Item 5 of Part II of our earliest possible Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q or, if impracticable, by any means reasonably determined to inform stockholders. In addition, stockholder proposals must otherwise comply with the requirements of Rule 14a-8 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (Exchange Act). Such proposals also must comply with SEC regulations under Rule 14a-8 regarding the inclusion of stockholder proposals in company-sponsored proxy materials. Proposals should be addressed to:

SmartHeat Inc.
Attn: Corporate Secretary
c/o
Newman & Morrison, LLP
44 Wall Street, 12th Floor
New York, NY 10001

For a stockholder who wishes to present a proposal before an annual meeting of stockholders but does not intend for the proposal to be included in our proxy statement must deliver a timely written notice to our Corporate Secretary. To be timely for our 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, our Corporate Secretary must receive the written notice at our principal executive offices:

- not later than the close of business on Monday, February 2, 2015.

In the event that we hold our 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders more than 30 days before or after the one-year anniversary date of the 2014 Annual Meeting, then notice of a stockholder proposal that is not intended to be included in our proxy statement must be received not later than the close of business on the earlier of the following two dates:

- the 10th day following the day on which notice of the meeting date is mailed, or
- the 10th day following the day on which public disclosure of the meeting date is made.

If a stockholder who has notified us of his or her intention to present a proposal at an annual meeting does not appear to present his or her proposal at such meeting, we are not required to present the proposal for a vote at such meeting.

Nomination of Director Candidates: You may propose director candidates for consideration by our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. Any such recommendations should include the nominee's name and qualifications for membership on our Board of Directors, and should be directed to the Corporate Secretary of SmartHeat at the address set forth above. For additional information regarding stockholder recommendations for director candidates, see "Consideration of Director Nominees" on page 12 of this proxy statement.

Copy of Bylaw Provisions: You may contact our Corporate Secretary at our principal executive offices for a copy of the relevant bylaw provisions regarding the requirements for making stockholder proposals and nominating director candidates.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ABOUT THE STOCK SALE

Q: WHY IS SMARTHEAT PROPOSING TO ENTER INTO THE STOCK SALE?

A: After due consideration of all other alternatives reasonably available to the Company, the Board of Directors concluded that the completion of the Stock Sale was the best alternative to raise additional working capital to fund the Company's Heat HP segment for expansion of its products into markets located in the United States, China and Europe. The Company requires significant additional funds and cash flow to pay creditors and to support the Heat HP business which continues to operate with losses. The Company has not been able to attract purchasers for its Heat HP segment that would generate sufficient funds to supply additional cash flow to support the Heat PHE operations. However, the Stock Sale substantially eliminates our losses from Heat PHE and provides funds for us to develop Heat HP's heat pump business. Following the Stock Sale, the Company's Board of Directors plans to explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include expansion of its Heat HP heat pump products into markets located in the United States, China and Europe, future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital. It is unlikely, however, that the Company will make a distribution of cash to our stockholders.

Q: WHAT WILL SMARTHEAT RECEIVE FOR THE ASSETS BEING SOLD IN THE STOCK SALE?

A: Pursuant to the terms of the EIPA, Buyers purchased 40% of the Company's equity interests in the Target Companies. The purchase price of RMB 5,000,000 was paid on December 30, 2013. The Company retained an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Target Companies from Buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which expired on February 28, 2014. Buyers have exercised their option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in Target Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000 subject to various closing conditions, including stockholder approval. If the Company's stockholders approve the Stock Sale, the Company has the option to require the Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000. A subsidiary of Heat PHE located in China will receive the proceeds of the Stock Sale. In addition, because the transaction is a Stock Sale, all liabilities related to the Target Subsidiaries (which, at March 31, 2014 was approximately \$63.6 million) will be transferred to Buyers.

Q: WHAT HAPPENS IF THE EQUITY INTEREST SALE IS NOT COMPLETED?

A: As a condition to closing of the Buyers' purchase of the additional 40% equity interest, approval of a majority of the Company's stockholders is required. In the event such approval is not obtained, Buyers may terminate the EIPA. If the Stock Sale is not completed, the Company will continue to seek other strategic options, including, without limitation, future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to raise capital. Management believes that the Company would continue to operate at a significant loss until another alternative to the Stock Sale is identified and implemented. If the Company continues to operate at a loss and becomes insolvent, it may be forced to resort to bankruptcy protection. In such event, it is extremely unlikely that the Company will be able to satisfy all of its liabilities and obligations, and there would therefore be no continuing operation of the Heat HP segment.

Q: WILL ANY DISTRIBUTIONS BE MADE TO SMARTHEAT'S STOCKHOLDERS?

A: The Board of Directors intends to continue to review anticipated liabilities and potential strategic uses of capital in connection with the operation of Heat HP as a going concern. Following the Stock Sale, the Company's Board of Directors plans to explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include expansion of its Heat HP heat pump products into markets located in the United States, China and Europe, future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital. Accordingly, we cannot specify with certainty the amount of net proceeds, if any, we will use for any particular use or the timing in respect thereof. Consequently, you should not vote in favor of the Stock Sale based upon any assumptions regarding the amount or timing of any potential usages of capital or distributions to stockholders.

Q: WHAT HAPPENS IF SMARTHEAT'S STOCKHOLDERS DO NOT APPROVE THE EQUITY INTEREST SALE?

A: As a condition to closing of the purchase of the additional 40% equity interest, approval of a majority of the Company's stockholders is required. In the event such approval is not obtained, either Buyers or Company may terminate the EIPA. If the Stock Sale is not completed, the Company will continue seek other strategic options, including, without limitation, future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to raise capital. Management believes the Company will continue to operate at a significant loss until another alternative to the Stock Sale is identified and implemented. If the Company continues to operate at a loss and becomes insolvent, it may be forced to resort to bankruptcy protection. In such event, it is extremely unlikely that the Company will be able to satisfy all of its liabilities and obligations, and there would therefore be no continuing operation of the Company.

Q: AM I ENTITLED TO APPRAISAL RIGHTS?

A: No. The Company's stockholders are not entitled to appraisal rights in connection with the Stock Sale.

21

DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Our current executive officers and directors and their ages, positions and biographical information are as follows:

Name	Position	Age
Oliver Bialowons	President & Director	45
Yingkai Wang	Acting Chief Accountant	41
Kenneth Scripta	Director	72
Weiguo Wang	Director	48
Xin Li	Director	40
Qingtai Kong	Director	67

Our executive officers are appointed by, and serve at the discretion of, our Board of Directors. Each executive officer is a full time officer. Our directors hold office for one-year terms or until their successors have been elected and qualified. There are no family relationships between any of our directors, executive officers or other key personnel and any other of our directors, executive officers or key personnel. There are no arrangements or understandings between any of our directors or executive officers and any other persons pursuant to which such director or executive officer was selected in that capacity.

Oliver Bialowons, President and Director

Oliver Bialowons was appointed as a Director and as President of the Company on May 25, 2012, to fill the roles formerly held by Jun Wang. Mr. Bialowons brings more than 20 years of experience as a turnaround executive to the Board of Directors and management of the Company. Mr. Bialowons also serves as a Director of KarstadtQuelle AG, a German retailer. In 2009, Mr. Bialowons assumed the position of Chairman of Bowe Bell Howell Inc., a financially stressed U.S. based manufacturer of industrial logistics equipment with worldwide operations and distribution. Mr. Bialowons directed the restructuring of Boewe Bell Howell's business and eventual sale of the Bell Howell business to Bell and Howell, LLC, a portfolio company of Versa Capital Management, LLC. Mr. Bialowons continued to serve as Chairman of Bowe Bell Howell in the United States until March of 2012. Since March of 2012, Mr. Bialowons has also served as the Chief Executive Officer of IHR Platz in Germany. From 2008 to 2010, Mr. Bialowons was Chief Executive Officer of Boewe Systec AG and Wanderer Werke AG, and from 2007-2008 he was Chief Operating Officer of neckermann.de GmbH. Prior to 2007, Mr. Bialowons held various management positions at Mitsubishi Motors Corp. and DaimlerChrysler AG.

Yingkai Wang, Acting Chief Accountant and Treasurer

Yingkai Wang was appointed as our Acting Chief Accountant on June 7, 2013. Mr. Wang has served as our subsidiaries financial manager since 2007, and has been responsible for our internal financial reporting, establishing a budget and for analyzing our subsidiaries' overall financial position. Mr. Wang was previously the financial manager of Shenyang Zhong Zhijie Electric Equipment Co., Ltd. from 2004-2007, and Shenyang Materials Group from August 1996 – April 2004. Mr. Wang is acquainted with our subsidiaries' operations and was appointed to serve our Acting Chief Accountant by our Board of Directors as we continue to search for a new Chief Financial Officer.

Huajun Ai, Corporate Secretary

Ms. Ai was appointed our Corporate Secretary on April 14, 2008. Ms. Ai joined Taiyu in 2002 as its Corporate Secretary. From December 2000 to October 2002, she served as an accountant at Shenyang Dongyu International Trade Co., Ltd. From July 1994 to November 2000, Ms. Ai served as an accountant at Northeast Jin Cheng Industrial Corp. Ms. Ai obtained her bachelor's degree in Foreign Trade Accounting from Shenyang North Eastern University in

1994.

Kenneth Scipta, Director

Kenneth Scipta was appointed to our Board of Directors and as Chairman of our Audit Committee on July 10, 2012. Mr. Scipta, a certified public accountant, has over 35 years of relevant accounting experience, and has served on several boards of directors. From 1993 to 1996, Mr. Scipta was the president and a board member of Mid-West Springs Manufacturing Company, a NASDAQ traded company, where he was responsible for day to day operations, planning, administration and financial reporting. Upon Mr. Scipta's resignation he assumed the duties of president of the special products division, which included catalog sales, die springs and the development of international sales. Previously, from 1979-1993, Mr. Scipta served in various positions such as president, vice president of finance and vice president of sales and marketing for Mid-West's primary subsidiary. From 1998 to 2006, Mr. Scipta was the chief executive officer and a board member of First National Entertainment Company, a multi-million dollar company traded on NASDAQ.

22

Weiguo Wang, Director

Mr. Wang was appointed to our Board of Directors on June 19, 2008, and serves currently as the Chairman of our Compensation Committee and member of our Audit Committee and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. Mr. Wang brings over eight years of relevant industry oversight and extensive engineering experience to the Board. Mr. Wang has served as a Director of the China Special Equipment Inspection and Research Agency since 2006. Prior positions include serving as a supervisor of the Lanzhou Heat Transfer & Save Energy Engineering Center in 2006, Assistant Secretary General of the China Standardization Committee on Boilers and Pressure Vessels in 2005 and Deputy General Manager of Boilers Standard (Beijing) Technology Services Center Co., Ltd. in 2004. From July 2001 to December 2003, Mr. Wang was a teacher at Tianjin University, China. Mr. Wang holds a bachelor's degree in Mechanics, a master's degree in Fluid Mechanics and a PhD in Fluid Mechanics, all from Beijing University. His skills include business analysis, industry analysis, and long-range planning, especially as applied to manufacturing and standards implementation.

Xin Li, Director

Mr. Li was appointed to our Board of Directors on July 29, 2009, and serves as the Chairman of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and member of our Audit Committee and Compensation Committee. Mr. Li brings more than a decade of corporate governance and industrial operations management experience to the Board. He is a renowned management consultant in China and currently serves as the general manager of Beijing ShengGao Consulting Co., Ltd., a strategic advisory firm founded by him more than 10 years ago that focuses on providing strategic guidance and management training to global companies. He also serves as an independent director and chairs the audit and various governance committees at several large Chinese domestic companies not listed in the United States. Mr. Li is a prolific writer in strategies and management issues. He has authored several books in the areas of management science and strategic planning. Mr. Li is proficient in Mandarin Chinese and English. He has an MBA and is a Research Fellow at the Management Science Center of Beijing University.

Qingtai Kong, Director

Mr. Kong was appointed to our Board of Directors on September 22, 2011, and serves as a member of our Audit Committee, Compensation Committee and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. Mr. Kong is a senior engineer bringing over 20 years of management experience in the gas supply and heating industry in China to the Board, and he currently serves as commissioner of China's Industrial Gas Committee. From 1995 to 2001, Mr. Kong served as Deputy Director overseeing district heating projects for the Qinhuangdao District Bureau of Municipal & Rural Construction in Hebei Province. From 1991 to 1995, Mr. Kong served as general manager of the state-owned utility Gas Supply Corporation of Qinhuangdao in Hebei Province. Mr. Kong's career in the gas industry began in 1988 with his position as chief engineer of a gas network project in the city of Qinhuangdao.

Board Meetings

Our Board of Directors held two meetings during fiscal year 2013, which does not include actions taken by written consent or committee meetings. Each director attended at least 75% of the meetings of the Board of Directors held during the period for which he has been a director and the meetings of the Board committees on which he served during the periods that he served in fiscal year 2013. Under our Corporate Governance Guidelines, directors are expected to attend either in person or by telecommunication, all meetings of our Board of Directors, all meetings of any committee of which he is a member and the annual meeting of stockholders, in addition to spending the time necessary to discharge properly his respective duties and responsibilities. All members of the Board of Directors were in attendance at the Company's 2013 Annual Meeting of Stockholders.

Board Leadership Structure and Role in Risk Oversight

Since filing our Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2012, we significantly restructured our Board of Directors and management. Two directors, Jun Wang and Arnold Staloff, resigned, and two new directors, Oliver Bialowons and Kenneth Sipta, were appointed to our Board of Directors. Jun Wang resigned as Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of the parent company in order to focus his time and attention on our operations in China. He retained his positions as General Manager of several of our operating subsidiaries. Mr. Wen Sha and Xudong Wang also resigned from their respective positions with the parent company in order to focus their time and attention to their roles with our operating subsidiaries. Oliver Bialowons assumed the duties of President of the parent company on May 25, 2012, and Michael Wilhelm assumed the duties of Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer on July 10, 2012, following the end of our second quarter.

On February 23, 2013, Michael Wilhelm resigned from his position as our Chief Financial Officer due to being “named personally in a groundless stockholder suit, where the alleged (unproven) actions in question are alleged to have taken place long before his involvement with the company.” Mr. Wilhelm was added as a defendant to the class action lawsuit filed against the Company, its directors, and certain of its former officers, originally captioned Steven Leshinsky v. James Wang, et. al, now captioned Stream Sicav, Dharanendra Rai et al. v. James Jun Wang, Smartheat Inc. et al., in an amended complaint filed by the Rosen Law Firm on January 28, 2012. We have had difficulty in retaining a suitable replacement for Mr. Wilhelm due to this class action lawsuit.

In the interim, and so as to have a principal accounting officer that could sign the certifications under Sections 302(a) and 906 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002 necessary to complete and file our period reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission, we appointed Yangkai Wang as our Acting Chief Accountant on June 7, 2013. While Mr. Yingkai Wang has served as a financial manager to our subsidiaries since 2007, he has limited relevant education and training in U.S. GAAP and related SEC rules and regulations.

As part of its oversight functions, the Board of Directors is responsible for the oversight of risk management at the Company. Our Board of Directors delegates risk oversight to our Audit Committee, which considers and addresses risk assessment and risk management issues and concerns, and reviews with management the Company’s major risk exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures.

Director Independence

Our Board of Directors has determined that each of Messrs. Sipta, Wang, Li, and Kong are independent directors. We have established the following standing committees of the Board of Directors: Audit, Compensation and Nominating and Corporate Governance. All members of the Audit, Compensation and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committees satisfy the “independence” standards applicable to members of each such committee. The Board of Directors made this affirmative determination regarding these directors’ independence based on discussions with the directors and on its review of the directors’ responses to a standard questionnaire regarding employment and compensation history; affiliations, family and other relationships; and, on transactions by the directors with the Company, if any. The Board of Directors considered relationships and transactions between each director, or any member of his immediate family, and the Company, its subsidiaries and its affiliates. The purpose of the Board of Directors’ review with respect to each director was to determine whether any such relationships or transactions were inconsistent with a determination that the director is independent under the NASDAQ rules.

Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

We established our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee (the “Nominating Committee”) in April 2009. The Nominating Committee consists of Messrs. Wang, Li, Kong, and Sipta each of whom is an independent director. Mr. Li is the Chairman of the Nominating Committee. The Nominating Committee assists in the selection of director nominees, approves director nominations to be presented for stockholder approval at our annual meeting and fills any vacancies on our Board of Directors, considers any nominations of director candidates validly made by stockholders (the process for which is set forth herein under the section entitled “Stockholder Nominations for Directors”), and reviews and considers developments in corporate governance practices. The Nominating Committee held no meetings during fiscal year 2013, which does not include actions taken by written consent. The Board of Directors has adopted a written charter for the Nominating Committee, the current copy of which is available on our website at www.smartheatinc.com.

Consideration of Director Nominees

The policy of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is to consider properly submitted recommendations for candidates to the Board of Directors from stockholders. In evaluating such recommendations, the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee seeks to achieve a balance of experience, knowledge, integrity, and capability on the Board of Directors and to address the membership criteria set forth under “Director Qualifications” below. Any stockholder recommendations for consideration by the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee should include the candidate’s name, biographical information, information regarding any relationships between the candidate and SmartHeat within the last three years, at least three personal references, a statement of recommendation of the candidate from the stockholder, a description of our shares beneficially owned by the stockholder, a description of all arrangements between the candidate and the recommending stockholder and any other person pursuant to which the candidate is being recommended, a written indication of the candidate’s willingness to serve on the Board of Directors, any other information required to be provided under securities laws and regulations, and a written indication to provide such other information as the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee may reasonably request. There are no differences in the manner in which the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee evaluates nominees for director based on whether the nominee is recommended by a stockholder or otherwise. Stockholder recommendations to the Board of Directors should be sent to:

SmartHeat Inc.
Attn: Corporate Secretary
A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141

Director Qualifications

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee will evaluate and recommend candidates for membership on the Board of Directors consistent with criteria established by our Board of Directors. While our Board of Directors has not adopted a formal diversity policy or specific standards with regard to the selection of director nominees, due to the global and complex nature of our business, the Board of Directors believes it is important to consider diversity of race, ethnicity, gender, age, education, cultural background, and professional experiences in evaluating board candidates.

Although our Board of Directors has not formally established any specific, minimum qualifications that must be met by each candidate for the Board of Directors or specific qualities or skills that are necessary for one or more of the members of the Board of Directors to possess, when considering a potential non-incumbent candidate, the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee will factor into its determination the following qualities of a candidate: educational background, diversity of professional experience, including whether the person is a current or former chief executive officer or chief financial officer of a public company or the head of a division of a large international organization, knowledge of our business, integrity, professional reputation, independence, and ability to represent the best interests of our stockholders.

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee uses a variety of methods for identifying and evaluating nominees for directors. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee regularly assesses the appropriate size and composition of the Board of Directors, the needs of the Board of Directors and the respective committees of the Board of Directors, and the qualifications of candidates in light of these needs. Candidates may come to the attention of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee through stockholders, management, current members of the Board of Directors, or search firms. The evaluation of these candidates may be based solely upon information provided to the committee or may also include discussions with persons familiar with the candidate, an interview of the candidate or other actions the committee deems appropriate, including the use of third parties to review candidates.

Audit Committee and Audit Committee Financial Expert

We have established a separately-designated standing audit committee in accordance with Section 3(a)(58)(A) of the Exchange Act. Our Audit Committee consists of Messrs. Scripta, Wang, Li, and Kong, each of whom is an independent director. Mr. Scripta, Chairman of the Audit Committee, is an “audit committee financial expert” as defined under Item 407(d)(5) of Regulation S-K. The purpose of the Audit Committee is to represent and assist our Board of Directors in its general oversight of our accounting and financial reporting processes, audits of the financial statements and internal control and audit functions. The Audit Committee held four meetings during fiscal year 2013, which does not include actions taken by written consent. As more fully described in its charter, a copy of which is available on our website at www.smartheatinc.com, the functions of the Audit Committee include the following:

- appointment of independent auditors, determination of their compensation and oversight of their work;
- review the arrangements for and scope of the audit by independent auditors;
- review the independence of the independent auditors;
- consider the adequacy and effectiveness of the internal controls over financial reporting;
- pre-approve audit and non-audit services;
- establish procedures regarding complaints relating to accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters;
- review and approve any related party transactions;
- discuss with management our major financial risk exposures and our risk assessment and risk management policies; and
- discuss with management and the independent auditors our draft quarterly interim and annual financial statements and key accounting and reporting matters.

Compensation Committee

We established our Compensation Committee in April 2009. The Compensation Committee consists of Messrs. Wang, Li, Kong and Scripta each of whom is an independent director. Dr. Wang is the Chairman of the Compensation Committee. The Compensation Committee is responsible for the design, review, recommendation and approval of compensation arrangements for our directors, executive officers and key personnel, and for the administration of our equity incentive plan, including the approval of grants under such plan to our directors, personnel and consultants. The Compensation Committee also reviews and determines compensation of our executive officers. The Compensation Committee may delegate its authority to subcommittees, but may not delegate its responsibilities for any matters involving executive compensation unless all members of such subcommittee qualify as independent directors. The Compensation Committee may consult with the members of management in the exercise of its duties. Notwithstanding such consultation, the Compensation Committee retains absolute discretion over all compensation decisions with respect to the executive officers. The Compensation Committee held no meetings during fiscal year 2013, which does not include actions taken by written consent. The Board of Directors has adopted a written charter for the Compensation Committee, the current copy of which is available on our website at

www.smartheatinc.com.

The compensation of our executive officers and other personnel is composed of base compensation and equity compensation. The Compensation Committee has determined the compensation of all executive officers appointed subsequent to the establishment of our Compensation Committee in April 2009. The Compensation Committee will review base compensation of the executive officers, taking into consideration the Company's overall financial position and the state of its business. The Compensation Committee will determine any increase in compensation, with respect to each officer, based on individual performance, level of responsibility, and skills and experience, taking into account the anticipated level of difficulty in replacing such officers with persons of comparable experience, skill and knowledge.

The Committee has the exclusive authority to hire compensation, accounting, legal or other advisors. In connection with any such hiring, the Committee can determine the scope of the consultant's assignments and their fees. The scope of a consultant's services may include providing the Committee with data regarding compensation trends, assisting the Committee in the preparation of market surveys or tally sheets or otherwise helping it evaluate compensation decisions. The Committee did not retain an outside compensation consultant in 2013.

Communications with the Board of Directors

Stockholders may contact the Board of Directors about bona fide issues or questions about SmartHeat by sending an email to info@smartheatinc.com or by writing the Corporate Secretary at the following address:

SmartHeat Inc.
Attn: Corporate Secretary
A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone
Shenyang, China 110141

Any matter intended for the Board of Directors, or for any individual member or members of the Board of Directors, should be directed to the email address or street address noted above, with a request to forward the communication to the intended recipient or recipients. In general, any stockholder communication delivered to the Corporate Secretary for forwarding to the Board of Directors or specified member or members will be forwarded in accordance with the stockholder's instructions.

Legal Proceedings

Oliver Bialowons, our President, was an executive officer of Bowe Bell & Howell Company, a U.S. based manufacturer of industrial logistics equipment with worldwide operations and distribution, which filed for bankruptcy in April of 2011. Bowe Bell & Howell Company acted as debtor in possession and no external receiver was appointed in the bankruptcy proceeding. The bankruptcy proceeding was subsequently dismissed in March of 2012.

Mr. Bialowons also served as chief executive officer of Wanderer-Werke AG from December 2008 to March 2010, and Boewe Systec AG from December 2008 to November 2010. Wanderer-Werke AG and Boewe Systec AG filed for insolvency in Germany in May of 2010.

Other than as disclosed above during the past ten years, none of our directors or executive officers has been:

- the subject of any bankruptcy petition filed by or against any business of which such person was a general partner or executive officer either at the time of the bankruptcy or within two years prior to that time;
- convicted in a criminal proceeding or is subject to a pending criminal proceeding (excluding traffic violations and other minor offenses);
- subject to any order, judgment or decree, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any court of competent jurisdiction, permanently or temporarily enjoining, barring, suspending or otherwise limiting his involvement in any type of business, securities or banking activities;
- found by a court of competent jurisdiction (in a civil action), the SEC or the Commodity Futures Trading Commission to have violated a federal or state securities or commodities law, that has not been reversed, suspended, or vacated;
- subject of, or a party to, any order, judgment, decree or finding, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, relating to an alleged violation of a federal or state

securities or commodities law or regulation, law or regulation respecting financial institutions or insurance companies, law or regulation prohibiting mail or wire fraud or fraud in connection with any business entity; or

- subject of, or a party to, any sanction or order, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any self-regulatory organization, any registered entity or any equivalent exchange, association, entity or organization that has disciplinary authority over its members or persons associated with a member.

None of our directors, officers or affiliates, or any beneficial owner of 5% or more of our Common Stock, or any associate of such persons, is an adverse party in any material proceeding to, or has a material interest adverse to, us or any of our subsidiaries.

SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

The following sets forth information as of the Record Date, regarding the number of shares of our Common Stock beneficially owned by (i) each person that we know beneficially owns more than 5% of our outstanding Common Stock, (ii) each of our named executive officers, (iii) each of our directors and (iv) all of our named executive officers and directors as a group. The amounts and percentages of our Common Stock beneficially owned are reported on the basis of SEC rules governing the determination of beneficial ownership of securities. Under the SEC rules, a person is deemed to be a “beneficial owner” of a security if that person has or shares “voting power,” which includes the power to vote or to direct the voting of such security, or “investment power,” which includes the power to dispose of or to direct the disposition of such security. A person is also deemed to be a beneficial owner of any securities of which that person has the right to acquire beneficial ownership within 60 days through the exercise of any stock option, warrant or other right. Under these rules, more than one person may be deemed a beneficial owner of the same securities and a person may be deemed to be a beneficial owner of securities as to which such person has no economic interest. Unless otherwise indicated, each of the stockholders named in the table below, or his or her family members, has sole voting and investment power with respect to such shares of our Common Stock. As of the Record Date, there were 6,583,399 shares of our Common Stock issued and outstanding.

Except as otherwise indicated, the address of each of the stockholders listed below is: c/o SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy A-1, 10, Street 7, Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone, Shenyang, China 110141.

Name of beneficial owner	Number of shares	Percent of class
5% Stockholders		
Northtech Holdings Inc. Mill Mall 5, Wickhams Cay 1 P.O. Box 3085 Road Town, Tortola British Virgin Islands	2,100,000(3)(6)	31.9%
Beijing YSKN Machinery & Electronic Equipment Co., Ltd. Rm 1106, Huapu International Plaza No.19, Chaowai Street, Chaoyang District Beijing, China	680,800(1)	10.3%
Yang In Cheol #630-5, Namchon-Dong Namdong-Yu Incheon, South Korea 302-405	384,800(2)	5.9%
Directors and Named Executive Officers		
Oliver Bialowons	200,000(4)	3.0%
Kenneth Sipta	50,000(5)	0.8%
All Directors and Named Executive Officers as a Group (7 Persons)	250,000	3.8%

(1) Disclosed on Amendment No. 1 to the Schedule 13D for Beijing YSKN Machinery & Electronic Equipment Co., Ltd (“Beijing YSKN”) filed on June 30, 2008, for beneficial

ownership as of May 7, 2008. Beijing YSKN has sole power to vote and dispose of the shares owned by it. Jun Wang and Fang Li each hold 50% of the equitable and legal rights, title and interests in and to the share capital of Beijing YSKN and, as a result of such ownership, each of Messrs. Wang and Li has the shared power to vote and dispose of the shares held by Beijing YSKN.

- (2) Disclosed on the Schedule 13G for Yang In Cheol filed on April 25, 2008, for beneficial ownership as of April 14, 2008.
- (3) Disclosed on the Schedule 13D for Northtech Holdings filed on July 28, 2014.
- (4) Disclosed on the Form 4 for Oliver Bialowons filed on March 31, 2014.
- (5) Disclosed on the Form 4 and Form 3 for Kenneth Scipta filed on April 24, 2014 and March 31, 2014 respectively.
- (6) 200,000 shares of Common Stock granted pursuant to Amendment No.3 to the Credit and Security Agreement.

We are not aware of any arrangements that could result in a change in control of the Company.

SECTION 16(A) BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP REPORTING COMPLIANCE

Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act requires our executive officers and directors and persons who own more than 10% of our Common Stock to file reports regarding ownership of, and transactions in, our securities with the Commission and to provide us with copies of those filings. Based solely on our review of the copies received by us and on the written representations of certain reporting persons, we believe that, all such Section 16(a) filing requirements were timely met during 2013, except for NorthTech Holdings, Inc. According to our records during the time period of December 21, 2012 through December 31, 2013 a Form 3 and Form 4 were not timely filed by NorthTech Holdings, Inc. in connection with the following transactions in the Company's Common Stock: 1,300,000 shares issued as of December 21, 2012, 100,000 shares issued as of January 1, 2013, 200,000 shares issued as of August 23, 2013 and 100,000 shares issued September 17, 2013. A Form 3 and Form 4 for each of the above transactions were subsequently filed with the SEC on May 28, 2014.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS

On July 27, 2012, we entered into a secured revolving credit facility under the terms of a Secured Credit Agreement with Northtech Holdings, Inc., an entity owned by certain members of the Company's former management, Jun Wang, our former Chief Executive Officer, Xudong Wang, our former Vice President of Strategy and Development, and Wen Sha, our former Vice President of Marketing. Huajun Ai, our current Corporate Secretary, is also a part owner of Northtech. As amended, the Credit Agreement provides for borrowings of up to \$2,500,000 with any amounts borrowed maturing on April 30, 2014. Borrowings under the Credit Agreement are secured by 55% of the equity interest in each of our wholly-, directly-owned subsidiaries and are repayable, at our option, in shares of our Common Stock. On December 21, 2012, we elected to repay \$1,301,300 of the \$1,384,455 outstanding under the Credit Agreement with 1,300,000 restricted shares of our Common Stock, 26.5% of our total issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock, as authorized by the Credit Agreement and approved by our stockholders. On August 23, 2013, we entered into the August 2013 Amendment to the Credit Agreement dated July 27, 2012, as amended on December 21, 2012. The August 2013 Amendment decreases the interest rate payable on borrowings under the Credit Agreement effective January 1, 2013, to 10% annually, compounded and payable quarterly, from 1.25% per month, payable monthly. We agreed to pay an amendment fee of 100,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock, and to deliver to Northtech share certificates representing 55% of the issued and outstanding shares of Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc., discussed further below, to perfect Northtech's security interest under the Credit Agreement. On August 23, 2013, we entered into an Assignment and Assumption Agreement with Northtech whereby Northtech agreed to assume a \$100,000 obligation of the Company in exchange for 200,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock. On September 17, 2013 we issued Northtech 100,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock in consideration of its consent to use its proposal as a stalking horse proposal to solicit other potential purchasers of our subsidiaries' assets. On March 26, 2014, we gave notice to Northtech pursuant to the terms of the Credit Agreement, extending the maturity date on the Credit Agreement from April 30, 2014 to January 3, 2015 and elected to pay the extension fee of 4% by issuing 200,000 shares of its Common Stock to Northtech. On July 10, 2014 we entered into the July 2014 Amendment to the Credit and Security Agreement and issued an additional 200,000 shares of our Common Stock as an extension fee.

On October 10, 2013, we entered in the EIPA, under the terms of which, Buyers agreed to purchase 40% of the Company's equity interests in substantially all of the PHE segment subsidiaries in the consideration of RMB 5,000,000. Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of certain of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajuan Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc. On March 27, 2014, Buyers exercised their option to purchase an additional 40% of the equity interests in the PHE segment subsidiaries from the Company. The closing of transaction will be scheduled to occur after satisfaction of the

conditions set forth in the EIPA, including, without limitation, approval of the transaction by a majority of the Company's stockholders entitled to vote.

Except as disclosed above, there were no transactions with any related persons (as that term is defined in Item 404 in Regulation S-K) during 2012 or 2013, or any currently proposed transaction, in which we were or are to be a participant and the amount involved was in excess of \$120,000 and in which any related person had a direct or indirect material interest.

Our written policy for related party transactions provides that we will enter into or ratify a transaction with a related party only when our Board of Directors, acting through the Audit Committee, determines that the transaction is in the best interests of the company and our stockholders. The policy requires the review and approval by our Audit Committee for any transaction in which (i) the aggregate amount involved will or may be expected to exceed \$120,000 in any fiscal year, (ii) we are a participant and (iii) any related person has or will have a direct or indirect interest. Related persons include our executive officers, directors, director nominees, persons known to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of our outstanding Common Stock or immediate family members of any of the foregoing persons. In determining whether to approve or ratify a transaction with a related party, the Audit Committee will take into account, among other relevant factors, whether the transaction is on terms no less favorable than terms generally available to an unaffiliated third party under the same or similar circumstances. If advance approval of a transaction is not feasible, the Audit Committee may approve and ratify the transaction in accordance with the policy. Any member of the Audit Committee who is a related party with respect to a transaction under review may not participate in the deliberations or vote on the approval of the transaction.

COMPENSATION OF DIRECTORS AND EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

As a “smaller reporting company,” we have elected to follow the scaled disclosure requirements for smaller reporting companies with respect to the disclosures required by Item 402 of Regulation S-K. Under such scaled disclosure, we are not required to provide a Compensation Discussion and Analysis, Compensation Committee Report and certain other tabular and narrative disclosures relating to executive compensation.

The following table sets forth information concerning the compensation for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, of each of our named executive officers.

Summary Compensation Table

Name and Principal Position	Year	Salary (\$)	Bonus (\$)	Stock Awards (\$)(1)	Option Awards (\$)(1)	Nonequity Nonqualified			Total (\$)
						Incentive Plan Compensation (\$)	Deferred Earnings (\$)	All Other Compensation (\$)	
Oliver Bialowons President	2013	100,000	0	0	0	0	0	0	100,000
Michael Wilhelm Former Chief Financial Officer	2012	48,800	0	5,000	0	0	0	0	53,800
Jun Wang Former President and Chief Executive Officer	2013	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Zhijuan Guo Former Chief Financial Officer	2012	30,000	0	0	0	0	0	0	30,000
Xudong Wang	2013	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	2012	150,000	0	0	0	0	0	0	150,000
	2013	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-
	2012	12,000	0	0	0	0	0	0	12,000
	2013	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

Former Vice President of Strategy and Development	2012	107,397	0	0	0	0	0	0	107,397
Yingkai Wang	2013	21,242	0	0	0	0	0	0	21,242
Acting Chief Accountant	2012	20,911	0	0	0	0	0	0	20,911

- (1) Amounts shown reflect aggregate grant date fair value of awards and do not reflect whether the recipient actually has realized a financial benefit from such grant, such as by selling the stock or exercising the options.

The following table sets forth information concerning the outstanding equity awards held by each of our named executive officers at December 31, 2012.

Name	Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End for 2013			
	Number of Securities Underlying		Option Exercise Price (\$)	Option Expiration Date
	(#) Exercisable	(#) Unexercisable		
Jun Wang	-	-	-	-
Zhijuan Guo	-	-	-	-
Xudong Wang	2,500	(1)	118.50	06/30/2016

Options granted on February 1, 2010, with a life of five years that vested on June (1) 30, 2011 and June 29, 2012.

Agreements with Personnel

On January 1, 2008, Taiyu entered into a 3-year employment agreement with Jun Wang, which agreement was renewed on the same terms through December 31, 2013, upon mutual agreement between Mr. Wang and Taiyu. Pursuant to the terms of his employment agreement, Mr. Wang shall receive a salary in an amount that is not less than the lowest minimum wage per month paid in Shenyang and shall be based on the uniform wage and incentive system in Shenyang. Effective on February 1, 2010, the Compensation Committee approved an increase in the annual compensation of Mr. Wang to a base salary of \$150,000 per year from \$18,000 per year. The Compensation Committee believed it in the best interests of the company to approve the increase in salary for Mr. Wang because of his continued importance to our long-term strategy and success and increased responsibilities since 2008 when his prior base salary was established under his employment agreement. However, he resigned in 2012.

On January 1, 2008, Taiyu entered into a 3-year employment agreement with Zhijuan Guo, which agreement was renewed on the same terms through December 31, 2013, upon mutual agreement between Ms. Guo and Taiyu. Pursuant to the terms of her employment agreement, Ms. Guo received a salary in an amount that is not less than the lowest minimum wage per month paid. Ms. Guo's employment agreement was terminated concurrently with her resignation.

On February 1, 2010, SmartHeat entered into an executive agreement with Xudong Wang for a term ending on June 30, 2013. Mr. Wang was compensated at \$120,000 per year and eligible for annual cash bonuses at the sole discretion of the Board of Directors. The Company terminated this executive agreement and issued a promissory note in the amount of \$77,625 in satisfaction of the Company's remaining commitment under the executive Agreement. The promissory note was subsequently paid in full with 77,625 shares of the Company's Common Stock.

On July 10, 2012, SmartHeat entered into an agreement with Mr. Oliver Bialowons, the Company's President, effective as of May 25, 2012 for a one-year term. His agreement is automatically renewed for another one year from May 25, 2013. Mr. Bialowons is compensated at \$100,000 per year.

Each of the above agreements contains provisions prohibiting competition by such officers following their services to us.

We currently do not have any defined pension plan for our named executive officers. Pursuant to their executive agreements, we shall provide to such officers all the necessary insurances and social welfares, including but not limited to medical, work injury, maternity, retirement and unemployment insurance and housing fund, according to

our policies and the relevant laws and regulations of local governmental authorities and the PRC.

We currently do not have nonqualified defined contribution or other plans that provides for the deferral of compensation for our named executive officers nor do we currently intend to establish any such plan.

Grants of Plan-Based Awards

On May 25, 2010, our stockholders approved the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan authorizing the issuance of up to 100,000 shares of our Common Stock. The Compensation Committee administers the Plan and may grant awards, including restricted shares, incentive stock options and nonqualified stock options, under the Plan to our officers, directors and employees pursuant to the guidelines set forth in the Plan.

On November 28, 2011, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang each received a grant of 32,500 restricted shares of our Common Stock under the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan in recognition of their service and contributions to us. The restricted shares were fully vested on the grant date and issued pursuant to exemptions from registration under the Securities Act.

On April 14, 2011, Xudong Wang received a grant of 5,000 restricted shares of our Common Stock under the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan with the intent of reflecting his expected future performance and to further align Mr. Wang's interests with those of our stockholders. The restricted shares were fully vested on the grant date and issued pursuant to exemptions from registration under the Securities Act.

On February 1, 2010, pursuant to his executive agreement, Xudong Wang received a grant of options to purchase 5,000 shares of our Common Stock at an exercise price per share of \$118.50. The options have a life of 5 years and options to purchase 2,500 shares of our Common Stock vested on June 30, 2011, with the remaining options to purchase 2,500 shares of our Common Stock to vest on June 29, 2012, subject to Mr. Wang's continued employment.

Change-In-Control and Separation Agreements

The employment agreements between Jun Wang and our subsidiaries specified the conditions under which the agreements may be terminated and set forth minimum severance payments according to the relevant laws and regulations of local governmental authorities and the PRC.

Our employment agreement between Xudong Wang and our subsidiaries specifies the conditions under which the agreement may be terminated and stipulated that Mr. Wang shall not be entitled to severance payments upon termination.

We do not have any other existing arrangements providing for payments or benefits in connection with the resignation, severance, retirement or other termination of any of our named executive officers, or a change in control of the company or a change in the named executive officer's responsibilities following a change in control.

Compensation of Directors

The following table sets forth information concerning the compensation of our directors for the year ended December 31, 2013.

Director Compensation Table for 2013				
Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$)	Option Awards (\$)	All Other Compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Oliver Bialowons	-	-	-	-
Kenneth Scipta	25,000	-	-	25,000
Weiguo Wang	12,000	-	-	12,000
Xin Li	17,910	-	-	17,910
Qingtai Kong	3,750	-	-	3,750

Our independent directors receive cash compensation, paid in equal quarterly installments, for their service. In addition, at the discretion of the non-interested members of the Compensation Committee, independent directors are eligible to receive bonuses for service to our company outside the normal duties as a director and grants of options to purchase our Common Stock under the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan. Messrs. Li and Kong receive compensation of \$17,910 and \$3,750 per year, respectively, paid in equal quarterly installments. Mr. Scipta receives \$25,000 per year, paid in equal quarterly installments. We do not compensate our non-independent directors for serving as our directors. All directors are eligible to receive reimbursement of expenses incurred with respect to attendance at board meetings and meetings of committees thereof, which is not included in the above table. We do not maintain a medical, dental or retirement benefits plan for the directors.

The directors may determine remuneration to be paid to the directors with interested members refraining from voting. The Compensation Committee will assist the directors in reviewing and approving the compensation structure for the directors.

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Our Audit Committee appointed GKM as the independent registered certified public accounting firm to audit the books and accounts of our company and our subsidiaries for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2013. GKM has served as our independent accountant since April 14, 2008. The following table presents the aggregate fees billed for professional services rendered by GKM for the years ended December 31, 2012 and 2013.

	2012	2013
Audit fees	\$ 159,500	\$ 234,750
Audit-related fees	1,300	2,500
Tax fees	-	-
All other fees	1,300	-

In the above table, “audit fees” are fees billed for services provided related to the audit of our annual financial statements, quarterly reviews of our interim financial statements and services normally provided by the independent accountant in connection with statutory and regulatory filings or engagements for those fiscal periods. “Audit-related fees” are fees not included in audit fees that are billed by the independent accountant for assurance and related services that are reasonably related to the performance of the audit or review of our financial statements. “Tax fees” are fees billed by the independent accountant for professional services rendered for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning. “All other fees” are fees billed by the independent accountant for products and services not included in the foregoing categories.

Audit Committee’s Pre-Approval Policy

It is the Audit Committee’s policy to approve in advance the types and amounts of audit, audit-related, tax and any other services to be provided by our independent accountants. In situations where it is not possible to obtain full Audit Committee approval, the Audit Committee has delegated authority to the Chairman of the Audit Committee to grant pre-approval of auditing, audit-related, tax and all other services. Any pre-approved decisions by the Chairman are required to be reviewed with the Audit Committee at its next scheduled meeting. The Audit Committee approved all audit and audit-related services provided by GKM during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013.

REPORT OF THE AUDIT COMMITTEE OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS

The Audit Committee (Committee) of the Board of Directors of SmartHeat is comprised entirely of independent directors who meet the independence requirements of the Listing Rules of the Nasdaq Stock Market and the Securities and Exchange Commission. The Committee operates pursuant to a charter that is available on our website at www.smartheatinc.com.

The Committee oversees SmartHeat's financial reporting process and internal control structure on behalf of the Board of Directors. Management is responsible for the preparation, presentation, and integrity of the financial statements and the effectiveness of SmartHeat's internal control over financial reporting. SmartHeat's independent auditors are responsible for expressing an opinion as to the conformity of SmartHeat's consolidated financial statements with generally accepted accounting principles and as to the effectiveness of SmartHeat's internal control over financial reporting.

In performing its responsibilities, the Committee has reviewed and discussed with management and the independent auditors the audited consolidated financial statements in SmartHeat's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013. The Committee has also discussed with the independent auditors matters required to be discussed by the Auditing Standards No. 16, Communications with Audit Committees, as adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) in Rule 3200T.

The Committee received written disclosures and the letter from the independent auditors pursuant to the applicable requirements of the PCAOB regarding the independent auditors' communications with the Committee concerning independence, and the Committee discussed with the auditors their independence.

Based on the reviews and discussions referred to above, the Committee unanimously recommended to the Board of Directors that the audited consolidated financial statements to be included in SmartHeat's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013.

AUDIT COMMITTEE

Weiguo Wang
Xin Li
Qingtai Kong
Kenneth Scripta

PROPOSALS TO BE VOTED ON

PROPOSAL NUMBER 1
ELECTION OF DIRECTORS

Nominees

The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee recommended, and the Board of Directors nominated:

- Oliver Bialowons,
- Xin Li,
- Kenneth Scripta,
- Weiguo Wang, and
- Qingtai Kong

as nominees for election as members of our Board of Directors at the Annual Meeting. At the Annual Meeting, five directors will be elected to the Board of Directors.

Except as set forth below, unless otherwise instructed, the persons appointed in the accompanying form of proxy will vote the proxies received by them for these nominees, who are presently directors of SmartHeat. In the event that any nominee becomes unavailable or unwilling to serve as a member of our Board of Directors, the proxy holders will vote in their discretion for a substitute nominee. The term of office of each person elected as a director will continue until the next annual meeting or until a successor has been elected and qualified, or until the director's earlier death, resignation or removal.

The sections titled "Directors and Executive Officers" and "Consideration of Director Nominees" on page 12 of this proxy statement contain more information about the leadership skills and other experiences that caused the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and the Board of Directors to determine that these nominees should serve as directors of SmartHeat.

Required Vote

The five nominees receiving the highest number of affirmative "FOR" votes shall be elected as directors. Unless marked to the contrary, proxies received will be voted "FOR" these nominees.

Recommendation

Our Board of Directors recommends a vote FOR the election to the Board of Directors of each of the above mentioned nominees.

PROPOSAL NUMBER 2

RATIFICATION OF APPOINTMENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors has appointed Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as the independent registered public accounting firm to audit our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014. During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013, Goldman Kurland and Mohidin LLP served as our independent registered public accounting firm. See “Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm” on page 20 of this proxy statement. Notwithstanding its selection, the Audit Committee, in its discretion, may appoint another independent registered public accounting firm at any time during the year if the Audit Committee believes that such a change would be in the best interests of SmartHeat and its stockholders. If the appointment is not ratified by our stockholders, the Audit Committee may reconsider whether it should appoint another independent registered public accounting firm. Representatives of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP are expected to attend the Annual Meeting, where they will be available to respond to appropriate questions and, if they desire, to make a statement.

Required Vote

Ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014 requires the affirmative “FOR” vote of a majority of the shares present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote thereon. If you elect to “ABSTAIN,” the abstention has the same effect as a vote “AGAINST.” Unless marked to the contrary, proxies received will be voted “FOR” ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP.

Recommendation

Our Board of Directors recommends a vote FOR the ratification of the appointment of Goldman Kurland and Mohidin, LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2014.

PROPOSAL NUMBER 3

APPROVAL OF THE STOCK SALE

At this year's Annual Meeting, our stockholders are being asked to approve the Stock Sale, which might be deemed to be a sale of substantially all of the assets of the Company, to Buyers as described in the EIPA, as amended, in the form of Annex A attached to the proxy statement. Stockholders are also being asked to consider and vote upon Proposal 4, which provides for one or more adjournments of the Annual Meeting to solicit additional proxies in the event there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3 at the Annual Meeting.

At this year's Annual Meeting, the proxies granted by stockholders will be voted aggregately FOR the approval of the Stock Sale described below and FOR a possible adjournment of the Annual Meeting, unless a proxy specifies that it is to be voted against the Stock Sale and/or against any possible adjournments.

Approval of Proposal 3 requires approval of majority of shares outstanding.

OUR BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS THAT STOCKHOLDERS VOTE FOR THE STOCK SALE DESCRIBED BELOW.

The following information is with respect to the Stock Sale:

FORWARD-LOOKING INFORMATION

This proxy statement contains statements that may constitute "forward-looking statements." Generally, forward-looking statements include words or phrases such as "anticipates," "believes," "estimates," "expects," "intends," "plans," "projects," "could," "may," "might," "should," "will," the negative of such terms, and words and phrases of similar import. For example, our statements about our reasons for the Stock Sale, our expected completion of the Stock Sale and our use of the proceeds thereof, all involve forward-looking statements. Such statements are based on management's current expectations and are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties, including, but not limited to, the difficulty inherent in operating in a rapidly evolving market, market and economic conditions, the impact of competitive products, product demand and market acceptance risks, changes in product mix, our ability to improve our margins, costs and availability of raw materials, fluctuations in operating results, delays in development of highly complex products, risks from uncertainties regarding litigation or mediation, our ability to continue as a going concern, risk of customer contract or sales order cancellations or reductions in volume, failure to meet the conditions necessary to complete the Stock Sale, risks inherent with each of the possible strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale as well as other risks detailed from time to time in our filings with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"). These risks and uncertainties could cause our actual results to differ materially from those described in our forward-looking statements. Any forward-looking statement represents our expectations or forecasts only as of the date it was made and should not be relied upon as representing its expectations or forecasts as of any subsequent date. Except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to correct or update any forward-looking statement, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, even if our expectations or forecasts change.

THE STOCK SALE

This section of the proxy statement describes material aspects of the proposed Stock Sale by Heat PHE, a subsidiary of the Company, through the Stock Sale, and certain related transactions. While the Company believes that the description covers the material terms of the Stock Sale, this summary may not contain all of the information that is important to you. You should carefully read this entire proxy statement and the other documents referred to in this

proxy statement for a more complete understanding of the Stock Sale and related transactions of the Company.

The Company's Board of Directors is recommending the Stock Sale be approved by its stockholders at the Annual Meeting. A copy of the EIPA, as amended, setting forth the terms and conditions of the Stock Sale, is attached as Annex A to this proxy statement.

On September 18, 2013, the Board of Directors of the Company authorized the execution of the EIPA with Buyers, which was entered into as of October 10, 2013. Pursuant to the terms of the EIPA, Buyers will acquire at the Closing controlling ownership of substantially all of the subsidiaries of Heat PHE which may be determined to constitute substantially all of the assets of the Company under Nevada law.

In consideration for the acquisition of shares pursuant to the EIPA, Buyers will pay to Seller

- RMB 5,000,000 for 40% of the equity interests of Target Companies
- RMB 6,000,000 for an additional 40% equity interest in the Target Companies (constituting control)
- RMB 2,500,000 for the remaining 20% equity interest if we exercise our option to require Buyers to purchase such 20% interest.

There is no assurance that the Stock Sale will be completed. Certain material terms of the EIPA and features of the Stock Sale are summarized below. Stockholders should read the EIPA in its entirety.

Background of the Company

We were incorporated in the State of Nevada on August 4, 2006, under the name Pacific Goldrim Resources, Inc., as an exploration stage corporation with minimal operations, to engage in the exploration for silver, lead and zinc. On April 14, 2008, we changed our name to SmartHeat Inc. and entered into a Share Exchange Agreement (the “Share Exchange Agreement”), to acquire Shenyang Taiyu Machinery & Electronic Equipment Co., Ltd., subsequently renamed SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“Taiyu”), a privately held Sino-foreign joint venture company formed under the laws of the PRC on July 24, 2002, and engaged in the design, manufacture, sale and service of PHE products in China.

We are a U.S. holding company with no material assets other than the ownership interests of our foreign subsidiaries that design, manufacture and sell PHEs and related systems in the People’s Republic of China (“PRC”) and Germany. A PHE is a device that transfers heat from one fluid to another fluid across large metal plates. PHE products are used in the industrial, residential and commercial sectors to make energy use more efficient and to reduce pollution by reducing the need for coal fired boilers. The subsidiaries of Heat PHE design, manufacture, sell and service PHEs, PHE Units, which combine PHEs with various pumps, temperature sensors, valves and automated control systems, heat meters and heat pumps for use in commercial and residential buildings. They also design, manufacture and sell spiral heat exchangers and tube heat exchangers. Their products and related systems are an increasingly important element in providing a clean technology solution to energy consumption and air pollution problems in China and are commonly used in a wide variety of industrial processes where heat transfer is required. Common applications include energy conversion for heating, ventilation and air conditioning, and industrial use in petroleum refining, petrochemicals, metallurgy, food and beverage and chemical processing. The subsidiaries of Heat PHE sell their products under the SmartHeat and Taiyu brand names and also sell PHEs under the Sondex brand name as an authorized dealer of Sondex PHEs in China.

Our wholly owned subsidiary Heat HP holds those subsidiaries that manufacture and distribute heat pumps and related products.

Background of the Transaction

During the final quarter of 2011 and the first four months of 2012 management met with various investment bankers, strategic consulting firms and banks seeking advice regarding financing, mergers, divestitures, asset sales, and other potential restructuring transactions. On April 23, 2012 we entered into a Restructuring Agreement, subject to Board approval, appointing Nimbus as a restructuring advisor to our Board of Directors. On May 15, 2012, Arnold Staloff, director and chairman of the Audit Committee resigned.

On May 24, 2012 and May 25, 2012, our board of directors held meetings in Hong Kong. The Compensation Committee recommended, and the Board approved, the appointment of Oliver Bialowons as a director to fill the vacancy created by the resignation of Mr. Staloff. Mr. Jun Wang, our former Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, discussed the downturn in business, the liquidity issues of the Company and recommended the appointment of Nimbus as a restructuring advisor to the Board of Directors whereby our Board of Directors ratified the Restructuring Agreement and the appointment of Nimbus. The Board of Directors then considered various factors impacting the financial condition of the Company and the need for immediate financing in order to preserve the financial viability of the public holding company. Mr. Wang indicated that he had formed a group of investors through a British Vergin Island special purpose vehicle called Northtech, Inc. ("NorthTech") led by him and including Mr. Sha, Mr. Xudong Wang and Ms. Jane Ai, our corporate secretary that would be willing to provide short term interim financing to our public holding company. Mr. Wang and our former senior management team consisting of Mr. Wen Sha, our former Chief Operating Officer, Ms. Zhijuan Guo, Chief Financial Officer and Mr. Xudong Wang our former Vice President of Strategy and Development, resigned. Mr. Sha and Mr. Wang continued as managers of the subsidiaries. Mr. JunWang also resigned from the Board of Directors and as our Chief Executive Officer in order to facilitate consideration by the Board of this financing option free of the issue of conflict of interest. Moreover, he indicated that our public holding company would be best served by an executive officer with experience in restructuring in order to evaluate strategic options for the Company. Jun Wang continues to serve in his positions as General Manager of certain of our subsidiaries. Mr. Wang then recommended to the Board of directors that Oliver Bialowons be appointed as President of our Company. The Board of Directors approved the appointment of Mr. Bialowons as President and instructed Nimbus to begin a search for a Chief Financial Officer for our Company.

To address our immediate cash needs, the Board of Directors approved borrowing up to \$1,000,000 to fund ordinary course operating expenses under a binding commitment letter for a Revolving Line of Credit, subject to an acceptable fairness opinion, negotiation of final terms and the execution of a definitive agreement. The Board of Directors directed Nimbus to determine if alternative sources of lending exist by conducting a market canvas to be completed by July 31, 2012. In the event that Nimbus was not able to find a lender on better terms than presented by NorthTech, Nimbus was instructed to negotiate the definitive terms of a secured revolving line of credit with NorthTech subject to approval of our President.

On May 30, 2012, after we announced the management restructuring and secured revolving credit agreement, NASDAQ announced that it was suspending the trading of our Common Stock until all requests for further information from NASDAQ had been fully satisfied. Our Common Stock did not trade on NASDAQ after that time. Notwithstanding the fact that the Company supplied to NASDAQ all information that was requested, the trading suspension resulted in a formal suspension on November 9, 2012 and to our ultimate delisting on August 19, 2013. While the decision of NASDAQ is currently under appeal the suspension and delisting of our Common Stock significantly curtailed our borrowing and financing options in connection with our restructuring efforts.

At a Board meeting held on June 28, 2012, our Board of Directors considered the issues facing the public holding company resulting from NASDAQ's suspension of trading of our Common Stock, the continued liquidity needs, the inability to dividend income from the subsidiaries while they were operating at a loss and the resultant need to restructure the public holding company. Nimbus updated the members of the Board of Directors on the conditions leading to the liquidity situation, the current financial condition of the company and the likely unavailability of funds to upstream to the public holding company for at least the next year and recommended that the public holding company enter into the secured revolving credit agreement and increase the amount to \$2,000,000. Nimbus reviewed the terms of the proposed secured revolving credit agreement with the Board of Directors and the various risks if the public holding company did not address its current liquidity issues. The Board of Directors approved the secured revolving credit agreement with Northtech and instructed Nimbus to explore additional options to permit the subsidiaries to upstream cash upon attaining profitability or obtain alternative sources of financing to replace the revolving credit facility and/or provide liquidity in the event that the subsidiaries did not become profitable.

In addition the Board of Directors reviewed the credentials of Michael Wilhelm and Kenneth Sipta and recommended that Nominating Committee interview the candidates for the positions of Chief Financial Officer and Chairman of the Audit Committee, respectively. On July 10, 2012, our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee approved appointment of Michael Wilhelm as our Chief Financial Officer and Kenneth Sipta to chair our Audit Committee.

On July 27, 2012, we entered into the secured revolving credit facility under the terms of a Secured Credit Agreement with Northtech Holdings Inc.

On August 31, 2012, a putative class action lawsuit, Steven Leshinsky v. James Wang, et. al., which purported to allege federal securities law claims against the Company and certain of its former officers and directors, was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. In addition to naming Jun Wang, our former Chief Executive Officer, the suit named our Chief Financial Officer Michael Wilhelm which despite the frivolous and unfounded allegations against him which were subsequently dismissed, resulted in his decision to resign as our Chief Financial Officer in February 20, 2013.

On November 21, 2012 we received a fairness opinion from Houlihan Capital, LLC as to the fairness of the terms of the Credit and Security Agreement. On November 19, 2012, our Board of Directors, after review, approved the conclusions of Houlihan Capital that the Credit and Security Agreement was fair to the Company.

On December 11, 2012, we held our 2012 Annual Meeting of our stockholders. Our stockholders approved the initial restructuring actions taken by the Company in fiscal year 2012 consisting of:

- The replacement of Jun Wang and Arnold Staloff on our Board of Directors with Oliver Bialowons and Kenneth Scripta, respectively;
- The appointment of Oliver Bialowons as our President;
- The appointment of Michael Wilhelm as our Chief Financial Officer;
- The retention of Nimbus as restructuring advisor to the Board of Directors; and
- The execution of the Credit and Security Agreement and the amendments thereto.

On December 14, 2012, our Board of Directors met to review the results of the Annual Meeting and to discuss the continuing difficulties encountered by the business of the subsidiaries and the liquidity issues facing the public holding company. The members of the Board of Directors discussed the possibility of a going concern qualification being included in audited financial statements of the Company for the in fiscal year 2012. In order to conserve cash disbursements for the year and to improve the financial position of the Company at year end, the Board of Directors made the determination that it was in the best interests of the Company to repay substantially all of the outstanding balance under the Credit and Security Agreement in restricted shares of our Common Stock valued for the purpose of the exchange at a price of \$1.00 per share prior to the close of the 2012 fiscal year. This transaction improved the balance sheet by exchanging debt for equity and resulted in a non-cash profit of \$768,300 being the difference between the exchange rate of \$1.00 per share and the actual market price of \$0.41 at which the Company shares of Common Stock traded on the date of the exchange.

The Board of Directors also proposed that the Company negotiate with Northtech to amend the Credit Agreement by increasing the line of credit to \$2,500,000 and adjusting the minimum and maximum share price for conversion of shares to a collar of between \$0.50 and \$3.50 per share. The Credit and Security Agreement was amended on December 21, 2012 after the exchange was completed at \$1.00 per share.

On February 20, 2013, Michael Wilhelm resigned as our Chief Financial Officer.

On June 7, 2013, Yingkai Wang was appointed as Acting Chief Accountant of SmartHeat, Inc.

On June 25, 2013, our Board of Directors met to discuss the continued deterioration of the financial condition of the public holding company and the progress of the restructuring and financing efforts. Nimbus outlined the continued pressing need for alternative sources of financing as the Company's subsidiaries require additional working capital to fund registered capital, accounts receivable, and research and development costs related to the Company's plate heating business. Nimbus further noted that additional funds were needed to expand the Company's business from eastern to western China where customer demand for the Company's products was shifting. Nimbus advised the members of the Board of Directors to approve a canvas of the market for additional sources of financing aside from Northtech which was approved. With respect to the market canvas, we circulated a Request for Stalking Horse Restructuring Proposals in both the United States and the People's Republic of China for the purchase of all, or a part of, or a joint venture investment in or with, the Company or any one or more of its directly or indirectly owned subsidiaries. This Request for Stalking Horse Restructuring Proposals was publicly announced in a press release on Form 8-K filed on August 26, 2013. In addition to the Request for Stalking Horse Restructuring Proposals, we retained a third-party firm in each of these respective markets to conduct a market canvas to seek proposals. In addition, the Board of Directors approved an amendment to the credit and security agreement lowering the interest rate to 10% per annum and permitting the company to incur an additional \$2,000,000 in subordinated debt. On August 23, 2013, the amendment was executed by Northtech and us.

The Board of Directors also approved an offer to be made to accredited investors who are currently stockholders of the Company to purchase Exchangeable Subordinated Notes in denominations of \$100,000 bearing interest at the rate of 10% per annum, due on June 30, 2015, and exchangeable, at the option of the Company, for restricted common shares at an exchange rate of \$0.50 per share. The Exchangeable Subordinated Notes were subordinated to the indebtedness owed to Northtech but otherwise were substantially similar to the terms under which the Company was borrowing from Northtech. The Company concluded the offering prior to the Annual Meeting of Stockholders on December 10, 2013.

The Board of Directors considered a recommendation by Nimbus to reorganize its lines of businesses into two segments, heat pumps and PHEs in order to provide better visibility and accountability for these businesses, additional options for financing and to facilitate further expansion of the heat pump business.

On August 13, 2013 our Board of Directors approved the segmentation of our businesses into the Smartheat PHE segment, consisting of PHEs, PHE Units, heat meters and related products, and the Smartheat Heat Pump segment consisting of heat pumps and related products. The segmentation was completed prior to the end of the third fiscal quarter of 2013.

On September 17th and 18th, 2013, our Board of Directors met to further consider the deterioration of our financial condition and alternatives available after Nimbus had directed third party investment firms to solicit levels of interest in purchasing all or part of the assets of the Company and/or its subsidiaries. These firms had contacted approximately 275 potential investors approximately evenly divided between the United States and China. One potential offer to purchase certain of the PHE related business was received. The investor group offered approximately 11 million RMB or \$1.8 million for these PHE business plus assign of liabilities. The Board of Directors made the determination that the proposal could be accepted, subject to negotiation of acceptable terms and execution of definitive agreements, if the Buyers would offer a minimum of \$2,000,000 (the approximate market value of the Company) measured by the market price and number of shares of Common Stock plus a premium and agreed upon a price of 13.5 RMB. In addition, the Buyers would need to agree, and the definitive documents would need to properly reflect, that we could use the proposal and agreement to solicit other buyers for the PHE assets, subject to a breakup fee of 600,000 RMB (approximately \$95,000). In effect the proposal would be used by the Company as a Stalking Horse to determine if a better offer could be found and evaluate the fairness of the price received. The market canvas and stalking horse process, together with the offering of Exchangeable Subordinated Notes to accredited investors who were our stockholders was disclosed in the Company's current report on Form 8K filed on September 30, 2013.

The definitive EIPA related to the proposal was negotiated and executed on October 10, 2013 with the terms further described below. A Form 8K was filed along with the complete EIPA on October 15, 2013. The definitive EIPA was negotiated with Buyers under the direction of Oliver Bialowons, President of the Company, with the support and assistance of the Company's professional advisers. Direct negotiations were conducted in the Chinese language through Heng Lu, the Managing Director of Nimbus Capital Limited, a Hong Kong registered company with Hongjun Zhang, representative of Buyers. Nimbus Capital is the China side adviser retained by the Company to solicit restructuring proposals in China. It was through these efforts in China that the proposal from Buyers was developed. Nimbus Capital is affiliated with Nimbus through a mutual cooperation arrangement whereby each provides support services for the other in their respective jurisdictions.

The principal issues which Mr. Bialowons directed Mr. Lu to negotiate were the following:

- price and premium
- transaction structure
- break up price
- representations
- conditions
- indemnification
- certainty

Price and Premium. The goal was to obtain the highest total consideration available, including payment in the most tax efficient form. After analysis, it was determined that the most effective means to avoid tax leakage was to sell stock and receive the proceeds in China with the most likely purpose of reinvesting the proceeds in the Company's heat pump business. In response to Buyers' initial proposal, the Board established a minimum cash proceeds of \$2,000,000 plus assumption of all liabilities, known or unknown, absolute or contingent, relating to the Target Companies subject to the Proposal. This represented a premium of approximately 10% to the Buyers' initial proposal, and a small premium to the Company's overall market capitalization. Ultimately, cash proceeds of RMB 13,500,000 was negotiated, equivalent to approximately USD \$2,200,000 when the EIPA was signed on October 10, 2013 plus assumption of liabilities. This represented a premium of approximately 15% to the total market capitalization of the Company on the date of signing.

Transaction Structure. The transaction was structured by the Company as a sale of stock. This was the most tax efficient structure but, more importantly, it assured the Company that all indebtedness and guarantees --which

included substantially all of the debt for borrowed money , and all guarantees issued by, all of the Company's Chinese subsidiaries--and other liabilities and obligation of the Target Companies, whether known or unknown, contingent or absolute, would be transferred to Buyers.

Break-up Price. Fundamental to the restructuring process and the Board's valuation was a stalking horse process used to determine the value of the businesses to be sold. Initially bids were publicly solicited, and the proposal from Buyers was the only proposal received by the Company during this initial aspect of the process. As part of the EIPA, the Board required the ability to rescind the sale to Buyers and accept a higher bid. The Company was able to negotiate what in effect was a break up fee of RMB 600,000 (approximately \$100,000)--which was approximately 5% of the total cash price and a much smaller percentage of the total consideration. Following the initial closing on the sale of a 40% interest, the Company conducted a resolicitation of proposals using the EIPA as a stalking horse. This resolicitation was reported in a Form 8-K filing on January 3, 2014. As noted elsewhere in this Proxy Statement, no other proposals were subsequently received by the Company.

Representations. Typically an agreement for the sale of a business (particularly a stock sale) contains multiple representations and warranties concerning the business, each with the potential to give rise to post-closing claims. Through the process of negotiating the EIPA, the Company was able to eliminate substantially all representations and warranties. As a result, Buyers are acquiring the Target Companies substantially "as is" without the right to assert post-closing claims.

Conditions. Typically an agreement for the sale of a business contains multiple conditions to closing, each with the potential to give rise to the ability of one of the parties to walk away from the transaction. Through the process of negotiating the EIPA, the Company was able to eliminate substantially all conditions to closing favoring Buyers. The EIPA contains two important conditions favoring the Company, namely, requirements for shareholder approval and receipt of a Fairness Opinion. These conditions allow the Company to walk from the sale transaction if a better offer can be identified.

Indemnification. Typically an agreement for the sale of a business contains provisions for post-closing indemnification, each with the potential to give rise to the ability of a buyer to claw-back part or all of the purchase price. The EIPA does not contain any provision for such post-closing indemnification.

Certainty. The Company wanted assurance that Buyers had the financial ability to close and would close without attempting to renegotiate the price or other terms and conditions. To provide that assurance, the transaction was structured as an “as is” transaction with no “material adverse change” closing condition. In addition, a minority 40% interest was sold to Buyers initially to assure their financial ability and commitment to completion.

The Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company’s subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company’s Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajuan Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc.

On December 7, 2013 our offer to sell Exchangeable Subordinated Notes expired without any subscriptions being received by the Company.

On December 10, 2013 we held a stockholder meeting at which our stockholders approved the amendments to the Credit and Security Agreement dated July 27, 2012, by and between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc. (“Northtech”), executed on December 21, 2012, and July 27, 2013 and, in an advisory vote, approved the restructuring actions undertaken by the Company in fiscal year 2013.

On December 20, 2013, the Board of Directors approved the sale of 40% of the Target Companies in our PHE segment pursuant to the terms of the EIPA.

On December 30, 2013 we closed the transactions contemplated by the EIPA and transferred 40% of the stock of the Target Companies to the Buyers.

Between December 30, 2013 and February 28, 2014, we conducted a re-canvas of the market and surveyed the Company’s major shareholders in an effort to attract a better price or competing proposal to the terms of the EIPA.

As of February 28, 2014, we receive no competing offers through the stalking horse process and the Company let its option to re-purchase the equity interest of the Target Companies expired un-exercised.

On March 27, 2014, we received notice pursuant to the EIPA that Buyers thereunder would exercise their option to purchase an additional 40% of the Target Companies, subject to satisfaction of the conditions set forth in the EIPA which included, without limitation, receipt by Buyers and seller of a fairness opinion to the effect that the sale of the additional 40% of the Target Companies is fair to the stockholders of the Company from a financial point of view and approval of the sale of the additional equity interests by a majority of our stockholders.

Reasons for the Stock Sale

The following discussion of the reasons for the Stock Sale contains a number of forward-looking statements that reflect the current views of the Company with respect to future events that may have an effect on its financial performance. There can be no assurance that the benefits of the transaction considered by the Board of Directors will be achieved through completion of the Stock Sale. See “Risk Factors.” Forward-looking statements are subject to risks and uncertainties. Actual results and outcomes may differ materially from the results and outcomes discussed in the forward-looking statements. Cautionary statements that identify important factors that could cause or contribute to differences in results and outcomes include those discussed in “Forward-Looking Information” and “Risk Factors.”

The Company’s Board of Directors has determined that the terms of the EIPA and the transactions contemplated by the EIPA and related agreements are advisable and in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders, and has approved the Stock Sale and the transactions contemplated by the EIPA.

In reaching its determination, the Company's Board of Directors considered a number of positive factors, including the following:

- The conclusion of the Board of Directors that the Company would not be able to continue to operate effectively in light of the significant losses that it and the subsidiaries were incurring to date and expected to continue to incur under its present corporate structure pursuing its existing business endeavors, nor would it be able to raise the capital necessary in a timely manner to permit it to pursue development of its business strategy in light of the Company's precarious cash flow position;
- The failure of the market canvas to identify alternative financing sources to Northtech and the failure of the use of the EIPA as a stalking horse to attract other buyout proposals and our inability to attract third parties to invest in the Company;
- The difficulties encountered by the public holding company in upstreaming funds by way of dividends to our public holding company due to transfer restrictions imposed by the Chinese government, registered capital requirements of the operating subsidiaries, and working capital needs of the subsidiaries;
 - The use of the proceeds of the sale to expand our heat pump business;
- The sale of the Heat Pump segment would not provide sufficient working capital to return our PHE segment to profitability;
- The terms and conditions of the Equities Interest Purchase Agreement and the financial ability of the Buyers to pay the cash consideration payable at the closing, which led the Company's directors to conclude that it was reasonably likely that the Stock Sale would be completed and that as a result entering into the EIPA would improve the ability of the Company to pay, or provide for the payment of, the liabilities owed to its creditors to a greater extent and explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital, including, without limitation, sale of the public company into which the net proceeds may be retained; it is unlikely, however, that the Company will make a distribution of cash to our stockholders;
- The results of efforts to solicit indications of interest from third parties regarding a strategic partnership or a potential purchase of the Company or some or all of its assets, which resulted in the best cash offer from the Buyers; and
- The failure of the offering to attract any of our stockholders who were accredited investors to purchase the exchangeable debentures.
- The substantial indebtedness of the Target Companies that will be assumed by Buyers in concurrent with the equity purchase.

The Company's Board of Directors also considered a number of potentially negative factors in its deliberations concerning the Stock Sale. The potentially negative factors considered by the Board of Directors included:

- potential negative impact of stockholder confusion after announcement of the proposed Stock Sale ;
- potential negative reaction of the investment community after announcement of the proposed Stock Sale ;

- other risks and uncertainties discussed above under “Risk Factors.”

The foregoing positive and negative factors together with the background of the transaction set forth above comprise the Board of Directors’ material considerations in entering into the EIPA.

The Company’s Board of Directors retained Nimbus in 2012 to act as restructuring advisor. Nimbus assisted the Company by retaining third party advisors to conduct a market canvas for lenders, soliciting purchasers for our Company or its assets, obtaining third party financing, and conducting the stalking horse process. Nimbus also advised our Board of Directors with respect to the restructuring efforts.

The Board of Directors did not ask a transaction adviser to deliver a “fairness opinion” at the time that the EIPA was executed confirming that the consideration to be paid by the Buyers is fair from a financial point of view to the Company’s stockholders; however, the EIPA provides that the Closing would occur only after completing a stalking horse auction process and cannot take place without a favorable fairness opinion delivered to the Buyers and the Company as a condition of Closing. The Board of Directors reached such a conclusion independently and determined that, under the circumstances, the Stock Sale was in the best interests of the Company’s stockholders and at the time of the consummation of the transaction would occur only if such fairness opinion were obtained. In the Board’s judgment, it was difficult to value a business that had been losing money and that needed an infusion of cash to expand its selling area if it were to regain profitability, particularly when a significant portion of its assets were intangibles and the businesses were burdened by guarantees that were difficult to quantify. The Company had been searching for an equity investment for 15 months without success. Moreover, even in the event that such cash infusion could be found, it was not certain that such cash infusion would be sufficient to increase sales, whether or not such sales would be profitable, and, if generated, whether or not the profits from such increased sales would be sufficient to return the Company to profitability. For this reason, the Board relied on an initial auction process followed by a stalking horse bidding process and a continuing right to terminate the EIPA until stockholder approval and a Fairness Opinion are obtained. The Company’s Board of Directors also determined that the costs of obtaining such additional “fairness opinion,” from a transaction adviser or any other third party used in connection with its decision, would be disproportionately higher than any corresponding benefit that would be realized by obtaining such an opinion. By deferring receipt of a Fairness Opinion until closing, the Company was able to defer the expenditure of funds related to such Fairness Opinion until after, and only if, shareholder approval is obtained and the Board was able to hold this event as a condition to close in the event that a better proposal could be identified.

The Company mandated that the transaction be structured as a stock sale to minimize tax liabilities so that all liabilities related to the Target Companies, including the subsidiaries' debt for borrowed money, would transfer to Buyers. Based on the factors listed above, the Board of Directors determined that a sale of stock would likely return the greatest value to the Company, and that no other alternatives had the likelihood of achieving success in meeting the Company's goals, including allocation of proceeds to our Heat Pump segment. The Board of Directors also considered that the sale of the Heat Pump segment would not provide sufficient working capital to return our PHE segment to profitability. There can be no assurance that the per share market price of the Company's Common Stock following the Stock Sale will equal or exceed the price or prices at which the Common Stock has recently traded. If the Stock Sale is not completed, the Board of Directors will explore what, if any, alternatives are available for the future of the Company. The Board of Directors does not believe, however, that there are viable alternatives to the Stock Sale.

The foregoing discussion of these factors is not meant to be exhaustive, but includes the material factors considered by the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors did not quantify or attach any particular weight to the various factors that they considered in reaching their determination that the terms of the Stock Sale are fair to and in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders. Rather, the Board of Directors viewed its recommendation as being based upon its business judgment in light of the Company's financial position and the totality of the information presented and considered, and the overall effect of the Stock Sale on the stockholders of the Company compared to continuing the business of the Company as is or seeking other potential parties to effect an investment in or other business combination or acquisition transaction with the Company.

Regulatory Matters

Other than the change in registration of ownership which must be filed and accepted by the State Administration for Industry and Commerce of China, the Company is not aware of any regulatory or governmental approvals required to complete the Stock Sale.

Use of Proceeds

A subsidiary of Heat PHE, and not the Company's stockholders, will receive all of the net proceeds from the Stock Sale. Following the Stock Sale, the Company's Board of Directors plans to explore strategic alternatives to deploy the proceeds of the Stock Sale, which may include expansion of our heat pump business in the United States, Europe and China future acquisitions, a merger with another company, or other actions to redeploy capital. It is unlikely, however, that the Company will make a distribution of cash to our stockholders.

Although the Board of Directors and management have had preliminary discussions regarding potential uses of our capital following the Stock Sale, the Board of Directors intends to continue to review anticipated liabilities and potential strategic uses of capital in connection with the continuation of the Company as a going concern. Accordingly, we cannot specify with certainty the amount of net proceeds, if any, we will use for any particular use or the timing in respect thereof. Consequently, you should not vote in favor of the Stock Sale based upon any assumptions regarding the amount or timing of any potential usages of capital or distributions to stockholders.

Appraisal Rights

Under Nevada law, the Company's stockholders do not have appraisal rights as a result of the Stock Sale.

Votes Required for the Stock Sale

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of the Company's Common Stock as of the Record Date is required to approve the Stock Sale.

THE COMPANY'S BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE FOR THE APPROVAL OF THE STOCK SALE.

PRINCIPAL PROVISIONS OF THE EQUITY INTEREST PURCHASE AGREEMENT

The following describes the principal provisions of the EIPA. The text of the EIPA are attached as Annex A to, and is incorporated by reference into, this proxy statement. You are encouraged to carefully read the EIPA in its entirety. Capitalized terms in the following descriptions have the meanings set forth in the EIPA.

The EIPA provides that the Buyers will purchase what might be deemed under Nevada law to be substantially all of our assets:

Divested Interests

The Buyers initially purchased 40% of the equity interests (the “First 40% Interest”) of the following entities. (collectively referred to as “Target Companies”):

- Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy, organized in the People’s Republic of China (“Taiyu”);
- Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd., organized in the People’s Republic of China (“Siping”);
- Shenyang Energy Equipment Co. Ltd., incorporated in the People’s Republic of China (“Shenyang”);
- Hohot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd., organized in the People’s Republic of China (“Ruicheng”);
- Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company, organized in the People’s Republic of China (“XinRui”).

Heat PHE, Inc. had an option to repurchase the First 40% Interest by March 1, 2014. If the option was not exercised, Buyers had the option to purchase an additional 40% of Target Companies (the “Second 40% Interest”).

In the event that Buyers exercise their option to purchase the Second 40% Interest and the transaction is consummated, Heat PHE, Inc., has the option, to require the Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% of Heat PHE, Inc.’s equity interests in each Target Companies.

Consideration

The purchase price received by Heat PHE, Inc. for the First 40% Interest is RMB 5,000,000.

The purchase price to be received by Heat PHE, Inc. for the Second 40% Interest (the controlling interest) is RMB 6,000,000.

The Company has the option to require Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000.

Change of Registration

- Heat PHE, Inc. will cause Target Companies to file the applicable registration change with the State Administration for Industry and Commerce.
- Target Companies will pay all costs related to the registration change. The taxes incurred from the transfer of the equity interests shall be undertaken by each tax obligor, respectively.

Representations and Warranties

Heat PHE, Inc. made the following representations and warranties:

- The equity interests in Target Companies is “as is” without any other representations, warranties or covenants except as provided in the EIPA.
- Heat PHE, Inc. has good and marketable title to the equity interests of Target Companies, free and clear of all encumbrances, subject to liens incurred by Heat PHE, Inc. pursuant to the Credit and Security Agreement between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc., dated July 27, 2012, as amended, and subject to any transfer requirements in the People’s Republic of China.
- Heat PHE, Inc. is duly organized and validly existing under the laws of the State of Nevada, and Target Companies are registered under the proper governmental authorities as required under the laws of the People’s Republic of China.

- Heat PHE, Inc. has the full right, power and authority to enter into the EIPA and to perform all of its obligations thereunder.
- The execution and performance of the EIPA will not breach any other signed material contract or agreement to which Heat PHE, Inc. is a party.
- The representative who has executed the EIPA on behalf of Heat PHE, Inc. has been duly authorized to execute this Agreement.

The Buyers made the following representations and warranties:

- Buyers are a group of individual citizens of the People's Republic of China.
- Buyers have the full right, power and authority to enter into the EIPA and to perform all of their obligations hereunder.
- The execution of the EIPA does not breach any other signed material contract or Agreement to which Buyers are a party.
 - The representative of Buyers who has executed the EIPA are duly authorized to execute the EIPA.
- Buyers have been given full opportunity to review all documents requested to evaluate the transaction and acknowledge that they have been given sufficient information to make the investment decision in Target Companies. Buyers acknowledge that the sale of Target Companies is "as is."

Conditions Precedent

The Closing of the purchase of the additional 40% of the equity interests of Target Companies is subject to the following conditions precedent:

- Approval by a majority of the Company's stockholders present and voting and
 - Receipt by the Board of a Fairness Opinion.

Closing

The Closings may take place electronically, or at such other place or by such other means as agreed by the Parties after the satisfaction of the conditions to closing in the EIPA. At each Closing, Heat PHE, Inc. will deliver to the Buyers evidence of the transfer of the specified equity interest in the Target Companies and Buyers need to deliver to Heat PHE, Inc.'s China subsidiary, SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co. Ltd., the consideration by wire transfer of immediately available funds.

Dispute Resolution

The EIPA provides for the following method of dispute resolution:

- The EIPA is governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China.
-

The Parties will use good faith efforts to settle disputes by mediation before the Hong Kong International Arbitration Centre (HKIAC) under the then-current version of HKIAC's Commercial Mediation Rules. Three mediators shall be appointed, one by Heat PHE, Inc., one by Buyers, and one who shall be selected by the Parties mutual agreement.

- If the mediation is concluded without the dispute being resolved, the parties may, at their option refer the dispute to arbitration at HKIAC in accordance with International Arbitration Rules.

Accounting Treatment

Following the Stock Sale, the Company's balance sheet will no longer reflect the assets and liabilities of the Target Subsidiaries, but will instead reflect the amounts received at the Closings and the assets and liabilities of Heat HP subsidiaries, Heat PHE subsidiaries (SanDeKe Co., Ltd. and SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co., Ltd.) and the parent company.

Interests of Certain Persons in the Stock Sale.

Buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajun Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajun Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc.

INFORMATION ABOUT SMARTHEAT INC.

BUSINESS

General

We are a U.S. holding company with no material assets other than the ownership interests of our foreign subsidiaries that design, manufacture and sell PHEs, heat pumps, and related systems in the People's Republic of China ("PRC") and Germany. A PHE is a device that transfers heat from one fluid to another fluid across large metal plates. PHE products are used in the industrial, residential and commercial sectors to make energy use more efficient and to reduce pollution by reducing the need for coal fired boilers. Our subsidiaries design, manufacture, sell and service PHEs, PHE Units, which combine PHEs with various pumps, temperature sensors, valves and automated control systems, heat meters and heat pumps for use in commercial and residential buildings. They also design, manufacture and sell spiral heat exchangers and tube heat exchangers. Their products and related systems are an increasingly important element in providing a clean technology solution to energy consumption and air pollution problems in China and are commonly used in a wide variety of industrial processes where heat transfer is required. Common applications include energy conversion for heating, ventilation and air conditioning ("HVAC"), and industrial use in petroleum refining, petrochemicals, metallurgy, food and beverage and chemical processing. Our subsidiaries sell their products under the SmartHeat and Taiyu brand names and also sell PHEs under the Sondex brand name as an authorized dealer of Sondex PHEs in China .

Our History

We were incorporated in the State of Nevada on August 4, 2006, under the name Pacific Goldrim Resources, Inc., as an exploration stage corporation with minimal operations, to engage in the exploration for silver, lead and zinc. On April 14, 2008, we changed our name to SmartHeat Inc. and entered into a Share Exchange Agreement (the "Share Exchange Agreement"), to acquire Shenyang Taiyu Machinery & Electronic Equipment Co., Ltd., subsequently renamed SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. ("Taiyu"), a privately held Sino-foreign joint venture company formed under the laws of the PRC on July 24, 2002, and engaged in the design, manufacture, sale and service of PHE products in China. The Share Exchange Agreement was entered into by SmartHeat, Taiyu and the stockholders of Taiyu. At the closing of the Share Exchange Agreement, all of the equitable and legal rights, title and interests in and to Taiyu's share capital of Yuan 25,000,000 were exchanged for 1,850,000 shares of SmartHeat Common Stock (the "Share Exchange"). We received PRC government approval on May 28, 2008, of our subscription for 71.6% of the registered capital of Taiyu, and approval on June 3, 2009, of the transfer of the remaining 28.4% ownership of Taiyu from the original joint venture stockholders who had received shares of our Common Stock in the Share Exchange. As a result of the Share Exchange and subsequent transactions contemplated by the Share Exchange Agreement, and receipt of the above PRC government approvals, Taiyu became our wholly foreign-owned enterprise, or WFOE.

Prior to our acquisition of Taiyu, we had no interest in any property, but had the right to conduct exploration activities on 13 mineral title cells covering 27,027 hectares (66,785 acres) in the Slocan Mining Division of southeastern British Columbia, Canada. In connection with the acquisition of Taiyu, we transferred all of our pre-closing assets and liabilities (other than the obligation to pay a \$10,000 fee to our audit firm) to a wholly owned subsidiary, PGR Holdings, Inc., a Nevada corporation ("SplitCo"), under the terms of an Agreement of Conveyance, Transfer and Assignment of Assets and Assumption of Obligations dated April 14, 2008. We sold all of the outstanding capital stock of SplitCo to Jason Schlombs, our former director and officer and one of our major stockholders, pursuant to a Stock Purchase Agreement dated April 14, 2008, in exchange for the return of his 250,000 shares of our Common Stock to us for cancellation.

As an expansion of our business following our acquisition of Taiyu, we acquired and established strategic subsidiaries in China and Germany. On September 25, 2008, we acquired SanDeKe Co., Ltd., or SanDeKe, a Shanghai-based manufacturer of PHEs. On June 16, 2009, we completed an asset purchase transaction with Siping Beifang Heat Exchanger Manufacture Co., Ltd., or Siping Beifang, to set up a new manufacturing facility under our newly incorporated subsidiary, SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd., or SmartHeat Siping. On August 14, 2009, we formed Beijing SmartHeat Jinhui Energy Technology Co., Ltd., or Jinhui, a joint venture in Beijing of which we own 52%, to provide consulting services and expand our sales of PHEs into new industries and regions of China. On April 7, 2010, we formed SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd., or SmartHeat Investment, as an investment holding company in Shenyang for our investment in and establishment of new companies and businesses in China. On April 12, 2010, SmartHeat Investment formed SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., or SmartHeat Energy, as its wholly owned subsidiary for the research, development, manufacturing and sales of energy products. On May 6, 2010, we formed SmartHeat (Shanghai) Trading Co., Ltd., or SmartHeat Trading, through a nominee, Cleantech Holdings Inc., a British Virgin Islands company, or Cleantech Holdings, to market and expand sales of our branded products in China. Effective as of November 9, 2011, we terminated the nominee-owner relationship and acquired direct control over SmartHeat Trading. On December 2, 2010, we formed Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd., or Ruicheng, a joint venture in Hohhot City, China, for the design and manufacture of heat meters, of which we acquired 51% of the equity interest on January 7, 2011. On March 1, 2011, we entered into a purchase agreement to acquire 95% of the equity interests in Shenyang Bingchuan Refrigerating Machine Limited Company, a Shenyang-based state-owned heat pump manufacturer and designer subsequently renamed SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd., or SmartHeat Pump. On November 1, 2011, we increased the registered capital of SmartHeat Pump and thereby increased our ownership percentage to 98.8%. On March 3, 2011, we completed the acquisition of Gustrower Warmepumpen GmbH, subsequently renamed SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH, or SmartHeat Germany, a designer and manufacturer of high efficiency heat pumps in Germany, to extend our clean technology heating solutions into the rapidly growing heat pump markets in Europe and China. We subsequently transferred ownership of SmartHeat Germany to SmartHeat Pump. On April 10, 2012, we established a new joint venture named Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (“XinRui”), of which we acquired 46%.

Our Business Segments

On August 23, 2013, the Company formed two new wholly-owned subsidiaries in the state of Nevada, Heat HP, Inc. (“Heat HP”) and Heat PHE, Inc. (“Heat PHE”), in order to reorganize the Company’s ownership structure over its subsidiaries. On August 23, 2013, the Company entered into an assignment agreement (“Assignment Agreement”) with each of Heat HP and Heat PHE which effected the reorganization. The reorganization was performed so the Company’s subsidiaries would be organized along their respective operating segments with Heat HP holding those subsidiaries that operated in the heat pumps and related products segment and Heat PHE holding those subsidiaries that operated in the plate heating equipment, meters and related products segment. The Company initially presented its financial results for the quarter ended March 31, 2013, in accordance with these operating segments and has continued segment reporting since that time.

Under the Assignment Agreement with Heat HP, the Company agreed to transfer, and in the case of indirectly owned subsidiaries, cause to be transferred, to Heat HP the following subsidiaries of the Company:

Heat HP
 SmartHeat (China)
 Investment Co., Ltd.
 SmartHeat (Shenyang)
 Heat Pump Technology
 Co., Ltd.

SmartHeat Deutschland
GmbH

SmartHeat (Shanghai)
Trading Co., Ltd.

Beijing SmartHeat

Jinhui Energy
Technology Co., Ltd.

Under the Assignment Agreement with Heat PHE, the Company agreed to transfer, and in the case of indirectly owned subsidiaries, cause to be transferred, to Heat PHE the following subsidiaries of the Company:

Heat PHE

SmartHeat Taiyu
(Shenyang) Energy
Technology Co., Ltd.

SanDeKe Co., Ltd.

SmartHeat (Shenyang)
Energy Equipment Co.,
Ltd.

SmartHeat Siping

Beifang Energy
Technology Co., Ltd.

Hohhot Ruicheng
Technology Co., Ltd.

Our Corporate Structure

Our corporate structure as of the date of this report is set forth in the following diagram. SanDeKe and SmartHeat Investment are WFOEs authorized by their respective business licenses to operate our businesses in China. SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH is wholly owned by Heat HP Inc. We own 52% and 30.6%, respectively, of the equity interests in our PRC-based joint venture companies, Jinhui and Ruicheng. SmartHeat Energy is a wholly owned subsidiary of SmartHeat Investment. Taiyu owns 98.8% of the equity interests of SmartHeat Pump. Prior to November 9, 2011, we had no direct ownership interest in SmartHeat Trading; instead, we controlled and were entitled to 100% of the profit or loss of SmartHeat Trading under contractual arrangements. Effective as of November 9, 2011, we terminated the nominee-owner relationship and acquired direct control over SmartHeat Trading.

*On August 23, 2013, SmartHeat entered into Assignments agreements with each of Heat HP and Heat PHE in order to reorganize the structure of its subsidiaries. Under the Assignment Agreements SmartHeat agreed to be transfer, and in the case of indirectly owned subsidiaries, cause to be transferred, certain subsidiaries to each of Heat HP and Heat PHE. Further, under the Assignment Agreements, SmartHeat agreed to cause its directly and indirectly owned subsidiaries to record these transfers with the applicable government agency in the People's Republic of China, and in the case of SmartHeat Germany, in Germany. The restructured entity is reflected above after giving effect to the sale of 40% of the Company's ownership interests in SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy; SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.; SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co. Ltd.; Hohot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd.; and Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company on December 31, 2014.

(1) We hold through 98.8% of the equity interest in SmartHeat Pump, with the remaining 1.2% of the equity interest held by Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone State-owned Assets Management Co., Ltd.

(2) We control 52% of Jinhui pursuant to a joint venture agreement entered into with the minority owner, Beijing Jun Tai Heng Rui Investment Consultancy Co. Ltd.

(3) We control 30.6% of Ruicheng pursuant to a joint venture agreement entered into with the minority owners, Hohhot Chengfa Heating Co. Ltd. and Beijing Taiyu Huineng Machinery and Electronic Equipment Co. Ltd. and our sale of 40% of our equity interests to the Chinese buying group.

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The Company's consolidated financial statements and financial statements schedules can be found in the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2014 attached hereto as Annex B and in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013 attached hereto as Annex C. Additionally, the following pro forma financial statements of the Company are included on the pages indicated at the end of this proxy statement:

	Page
<u>Smartheat Inc and Subsidiaries Unaudited Pro Forma Consolidated Balance Sheets</u>	51
<u>Reflecting The Sale of Certain Entities of PHE Segment, March 31, 2014</u>	
<u>Smartheat Inc and Subsidiaries Unaudited Pro Forma Consolidated Statement of Operations</u>	52
<u>Reflecting The Sale of Certain Entities of PHE Segment, March 31, 2014</u>	
<u>Smartheat Inc and Subsidiaries Unaudited Pro Forma Consolidated Statements of Operations</u>	53
<u>Reflecting The Sale of Certain Entities of PHE Segment, Year Ended December 31, 2013</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. Smartheat Siping Beifang</u>	54
<u>Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd. Unaudited</u>	
<u>Consolidated and Combined Balance Sheets, March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	56
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Unaudited</u>	
<u>Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss, Three Months Ended March 31, 2014 and</u>	
<u>March 31, 2013</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	57
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Unaudited</u>	
<u>Statements of Cash Flows, Three Months Ended March 31, 2014 and March 31, 2013</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	58
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Notes to</u>	
<u>Unaudited Consolidated and Combined Financial Statements March 31, 2014 and December</u>	
<u>31, 2013</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. Smartheat Siping Beifang</u>	69
<u>Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd. Unaudited</u>	
<u>Consolidated and Combined Balance Sheets, December 31, 2013 and December 31, 2012</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	70
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Unaudited</u>	
<u>Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss, Years Ended December 31, 2013 and</u>	
<u>December 31, 2012</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	71
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Unaudited</u>	
<u>Statements of Cash Flows, Years Ended December 31, 2013 and December 31, 2012</u>	
<u>Smartheat Taiyu (Shengyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat Siping Beifang Energy</u>	72
<u>Technology Co., Ltd Smartheat (Shengyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd., Notes to</u>	
<u>Unaudited Consolidated and Combined Financial Statements December 31, 2013 and</u>	
<u>December 31, 2012</u>	

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
REFLECTING THE SALE OF CERTAIN ENTITIES OF PHE SEGMENT

	AS OF MARCH 31, 2014			
	Company Historical (1)	Sales of PHE segment (2)	Pro Forma adjustments	Company Pro Forma
ASSETS				
CURRENT ASSETS				
Cash & equivalents	\$ 8,411,143	\$ 4,468,279	\$ -	\$ 3,942,864
Restricted cash	1,455,554	1,190,279		265,275
Accounts receivable, net	2,054,887	5,750,708	5,816,120 a	2,120,299
Retentions receivable, net	4,023,150	3,922,841		100,309
Advances to suppliers, net	3,718,489	1,957,638		1,760,851
Other receivables (net), prepayments and deposits	2,132,253	25,939,134	38,869,446b	15,062,565
Inventories, net	56,949,501	49,134,233		7,815,268
Taxes receivable	767,231	727,085		40,146
Notes receivable - bank acceptances	2,000,770	1,769,697		231,073
Total current assets	81,512,978	94,859,894	44,685,565	31,338,649
NONCURRENT ASSETS				
Long term investment	931,216	-	10,858,126 b	11,789,342
Restricted cash	249,744	237,329		12,415
Advance to supplier for equipment	1,242,074	1,242,074		-
Construction in progress	1,326,234	1,326,234		-
Property and equipment, net	9,761,183	8,215,892		1,545,291
Intangible assets, net	14,590,363	13,911,946		678,417
Total noncurrent assets	28,100,814	24,933,475	10,858,126	14,025,465
TOTAL ASSETS	\$ 109,613,792	\$ 119,793,369	\$ 55,543,691	\$ 45,364,114
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY				
CURRENT LIABILITIES				
Accounts payable	\$ 6,778,423	\$ 7,627,821	\$ 5,816,120 a	\$ 4,966,722
Advance from customers	2,093,647	1,400,936		692,711
Taxes payable	16,965	16,136		829
Accrued liabilities and other payables	17,415,851	30,821,405	38,269,416 a	24,863,862
Notes payable - bank acceptances	1,550,872	1,550,872		-

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

Loans payable	20,110,039	20,110,039		-
Total current liabilities	47,965,797	61,527,209	44,085,536	30,524,124
CREDIT LINE PAYABLE	1,749,335	-		1,749,335
LONG-TERM LOAN	2,113,100	2,113,100		-
DEFERRED TAX LIABILITY	2,951	-		2,951
COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES				
STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY				
Common stock	6,133	-		6,133
Paid-in capital	81,901,266	53,849,023	54,976,193 b	83,028,436
Shares to be issued	37,500	-		37,500
Statutory reserve	5,389,057	4,608,375		780,682
Accumulated other comprehensive income	8,428,963	6,938,074	(384,077a)	1,106,812
Accumulated deficit	(61,067,784)	(32,097,193)	(43,133,961)	(72,104,552)
Total Company stockholders' equity	34,695,135	33,298,279	11,458,155	12,855,011
NONCONTROLLING INTEREST	23,087,474	22,854,781		232,693
TOTAL EQUITY	57,782,609	56,153,060	11,458,155	13,087,704
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	\$ 109,613,792	\$ 119,793,369	\$ 55,543,691	\$ 45,364,114

(1) Source: unaudited financial statements of SmartHeat Inc. as of March 31, 2014, as filed in the Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on June 26, 2014.

(2) Source: unaudited financial statements of disposed entities of SmartHeat Inc. as of March 31, 2014, as included in this proxy.

(a) To include the inter-company transactions between disposed entities and other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc. The remaining receivables from and payables to the disposed entities in the pro forma column includes accounts receivable of \$1,540,668, other receivables of \$12,899,920, accounts payable of \$4,275,452 and other payables of \$19,070,905, and the Company expects the remaining entities will collect and pay those amounts in the normal course of business subsequent to the disposition.

(b) To reflect the sale of additional 40% equity interest for RMB 6 million, and loss on sale (the difference between the selling price and net asset of disposed entities), cost method accounting applied after the sale of total 80% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui. The amount for the remaining 20% interest (recorded as investment) for Taiyu, Siping and SmartHeat Energy is \$11,230,612, which is 20% multiplied by the net asset of Taiyu, Siping and SmartHeat Energy of \$56,153,060 at March 31, 2014, assuming the 100% net assets of disposed entities before any disposal.

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS
 REFLECTING THE SALE OF CERTAIN ENTITIES OF PHE SEGMENT

THREE MONTHS ENDED MARCH 31, 2014

	Company Historical (1)	Sales of PHE segment (2)	Pro Forma adjustments	Company Pro Forma
Net sales	\$ 4,959,966	\$ 4,743,304	\$ 608,688 a	\$ 825,350
Cost of goods sold	5,363,957	5,086,185	608,688 a	886,460
Gross loss	(403,991)	(342,881)	-	(61,110)
Operating expenses				
Selling	1,566,511	1,206,411		360,100
General and administrative	2,914,327	1,422,957		1,491,370
Provision for bad debts	8,749,275	8,738,053		11,222
Provision for advance to supplier	74,790	59,063		15,727
Total operating expenses	13,304,903	11,426,484		1,878,419
Loss from operations	(13,708,894)	(11,769,365)		(1,939,529)
Non-operating income (expenses)				
Investment loss	(3,609)	(3,609)		-
Interest income	27,683	24,641		3,042
Interest expense	(369,142)	(333,913)		(35,229)
Financial expense	(52,136)	(32,716)		(19,420)
Foreign exchange transaction gain	3,399	3,399		-
Other income, net	241,751	174,270		67,481
Total non-operating expenses, net	(152,054)	(167,928)		15,874
Loss before income tax	(13,860,948)	(11,937,293)		(1,923,655)
Income tax benefit	(14,536)	-		(14,536)
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(13,846,412)	(11,937,293)		(1,909,119)
Less: Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(4,770,467)	(4,756,397)		(14,070)
Net loss to SmartHeat Inc.	(9,075,945)	(7,180,896)		(1,895,049)
Basic and diluted weighted average shares outstanding	6,147,288			6,147,288
Basic and diluted loss per share	\$ (1.48)			\$ (0.31)

(1) Source: unaudited financial statements of SmartHeat Inc. as of March 31, 2014, as filed in the Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on June 26, 2014.

(2) Source: unaudited financial statements of disposed entities of SmartHeat Inc. for the three months ended March 31, 2014, as included in this proxy.

(a) To include the inter-company sales between disposed entities and other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc. The Company believes that there may be occasional intercompany sales after disposal of Target Companies not expected to exceed \$100,000 annually.

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS
 REFLECTING THE SALE OF CERTAIN ENTITIES OF PHE SEGMENT

	YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2013			
	Company Historical (1)	Sales of PHE segment (2)	Pro Forma adjustments	Company Pro Forma
Net sales	\$ 44,709,526	\$ 38,915,416	\$ 1,974,163 a	\$ 7,768,273
Cost of goods sold	40,401,380	35,659,348	1,974,163 a	6,716,195
Gross profit	4,308,146	3,256,068	-	1,052,078
Operating expenses				
Selling	6,864,059	5,084,636		1,779,423
General and administrative	10,400,323	4,186,459		6,213,864
Provision for bad debts	27,240,939	25,978,254		1,262,685
Provision for advance to supplier	(593,838)	(627,264)		33,426
Total operating expenses	43,911,483	34,622,085		9,289,398
Loss from operations	(39,603,338)	(31,366,017)		(8,237,321)
Non-operating income (expenses)				
Investment income	153,237	153,237		(0)
Interest income	159,972	79,704		80,268
Interest expense	(1,816,456)	(1,758,210)		(58,246)
Financial expense	(249,681)	(73,567)		(176,114)
Foreign exchange transaction loss	(9,495)	(9,478)		(17)
Loss on sale of equity interest	(842,491)	-	(43,133,961) b	(43,976,452)
Other income, net	1,314,945	470,730		844,215
Total non-operating expenses, net	(1,289,971)	(1,137,584)		(43,286,347)
Loss before income tax	(40,893,309)	(32,503,601)		(51,523,668)
Income tax (benefit) expense	(50,657)	26,725		(77,382)
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(40,842,652)	(32,530,326)		(51,446,287)
Less: Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(319,904)	(305,710)		(14,194)
Net loss to SmartHeat Inc.	\$ (40,522,748)	\$ (32,224,616)		\$ (51,432,093)
Basic and diluted weighted average shares outstanding	5,870,111			5,870,111
Basic and diluted loss per share	\$ (6.90)			\$ (8.76)

(1) Source: audited financial statements of SmartHeat Inc. as of December 31, 2013, as filed in the Form 10-K filed with the SEC on April 15, 2014.

(2) Source: unaudited financial statements of disposed entities of SmartHeat Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2013.

(a) To include the inter-company sales between disposed entities and other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc. The Company believes that there may be occasional intercompany sales after disposal of Target Companies not expected to exceed \$100,000 annually.

(b) To reflect the sale of additional 40% equity interest and loss on sale; cost method accounting applied after the sale of total 80% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui. The loss on sale of disposed entities is calculated as follows:

	selling price of \$984,107 (RMB 6 million) for additional 40% equity interest sale,
1,788,488	plus selling price of \$804,381 for first 40% equity interest sale on December 31, 2013.
	net assets for sale of disposed entities (80% of total net assets to be sold as of March
44,922,448	31, 2014)
(43,133,960)	loss on sale

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED BALANCE SHEETS
(UNAUDITED)

	March 31, 2014	December 31, 2013
ASSETS		
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash & equivalents	\$4,468,279	\$9,283,788
Restricted cash	1,190,279	2,345,258
Accounts receivable, net	5,750,708	14,822,112
Retentions receivable	3,922,841	4,141,585
Advances to suppliers, net	1,957,638	3,572,023
Other receivables (net), prepayments and deposits	25,939,134	26,344,942
Inventories, net	49,134,233	48,787,876
Taxes receivable	727,085	968,124
Notes receivable - bank acceptances	1,769,697	2,529,954
Total current assets	94,859,894	112,795,662
NONCURRENT ASSETS		
Restricted cash	237,329	123,398
Advance to supplier for equipment	1,242,074	1,276,247
Construction in progress	1,326,234	1,340,905
Property and equipment, net	8,215,892	8,547,040
Intangible assets, net	13,911,946	14,163,077
Total noncurrent assets	24,933,475	25,450,667
TOTAL ASSETS	\$119,793,369	\$138,246,329
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable	\$7,627,821	\$7,474,236
Advance from customers	1,400,936	1,875,894
Taxes payable	16,136	130,379
Accrued liabilities and other payables	30,821,405	30,938,077
Notes payable - bank acceptances	1,550,872	2,590,025
Loans payable	20,110,039	24,462,299
Total current liabilities	61,527,209	67,470,910
LONG-TERM LOAN	2,113,100	2,132,231

COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

Paid-in capital	53,849,023	53,849,023
Statutory reserve	4,608,375	4,608,375
Accumulated other comprehensive income	6,938,074	7,517,273
Accumulated deficit	(32,097,193)	(24,916,297)
Total Companies stockholders' equity	33,298,279	41,058,374
NONCONTROLLING INTEREST	22,854,781	27,584,814
TOTAL EQUITY	56,153,060	68,643,188
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	\$ 119,793,369	\$ 138,246,329

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(UNAUDITED)

	THREE MONTHS ENDED	
	MARCH 31,	
	2014	2013
Net sales	\$4,743,304	\$5,557,110
Cost of goods sold	5,086,185	8,298,351
Gross profit (loss)	(342,881)	(2,741,241)
Operating expenses		
Selling	1,206,411	1,143,480
General and administrative	1,422,957	1,265,599
Provision for bad debts	8,738,053	4,521,548
Provision for advance to supplier	59,063	(1,068,279)
Total operating expenses	11,426,484	5,862,348
Loss from operations	(11,769,365)	(8,603,589)
Non-operating income (expenses)		
Investment income (loss)	(3,609)	561
Interest income	24,641	11,732
Interest expense	(333,913)	(340,139)
Financial expense	(32,716)	(6,993)
Foreign exchange transaction gain	3,399	2,499
Other income, net	174,270	134,161
Total non-operating expenses, net	(167,928)	(198,179)
Loss before income tax	(11,937,293)	(8,801,768)
Income tax expense	-	-
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(11,937,293)	(8,801,768)
Less: Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(4,756,397)	(37,228)
Net loss to SmartHeat Inc. - disposed entities	(7,180,896)	(8,764,540)
Other comprehensive item		
Foreign currency translation gain (loss) attributable to SmartHeat Inc.	(579,199)	2,531,679
Foreign currency translation gain attributable to noncontrolling interest	26,364	2,067

Comprehensive loss attributable to SmartHeat Inc.	\$(7,760,095)	\$(6,232,861)
Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	\$(4,730,033)	\$(35,161)

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(UNAUDITED)

	THREE MONTHS ENDED	
	MARCH 31,	
	2014	2013
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:		
Loss including noncontrolling interest	\$(11,937,293)	\$(8,801,768)
Adjustments to reconcile loss including noncontrolling interest to net cash used in operating activities:		
Investment income	3,609	(561)
Depreciation and amortization	387,185	355,123
Provision for bad debts	8,738,053	4,521,548
Provision for inventory impairment	864,994	4,847,360
Provision for advance to suppliers	59,063	(1,068,279)
(Increase) decrease in assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	1,442,446	6,553,685
Retentions receivable	182,596	(647,825)
Advances to suppliers	1,554,940	1,040,847
Other receivables, prepayments and deposits	(1,025,507)	(570,950)
Inventories	(1,653,472)	(6,367,326)
Taxes receivable	119,944	(1,268,714)
Accounts payable	(799,698)	961,974
Advance from customers	(3,438,614)	487,613
Taxes payable	-	(717,647)
Accrued liabilities and other payables	3,136,638	280,020
Net cash used in operating activities	(2,365,115)	(394,900)
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		
Change in restricted cash	1,024,577	(132,798)
Acquisition of property & equipment	(3,910)	(257,493)
Notes receivable	741,668	377,321
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	1,762,335	(12,970)
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:		
Proceeds from short-term loans	7,178,649	22,521,303
Repayment on short-term loans	(11,334,454)	(24,281,277)
Net cash used in financing activities	(4,155,806)	(1,759,974)
EFFECT OF EXCHANGE RATE CHANGE ON CASH & EQUIVALENTS	(56,923)	34,524
NET DECREASE IN CASH & EQUIVALENTS	(4,815,509)	(2,133,320)

CASH & EQUIVALENTS, BEGINNING OF PERIOD	9,283,788	14,291,095
CASH & EQUIVALENTS, END OF PERIOD	\$4,468,279	\$12,157,775
Supplemental cash flow data:		
Income tax paid	\$12,772	\$589,065
Interest paid	\$430,154	\$340,139

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
MARCH 31, 2014 AND DECEMBER 31, 2013 (UNAUDITED)

1. ORGANIZATION AND DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS

SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“Taiyu”), is engaged in the design, manufacture, sale and servicing of plate heat exchange (“PHE”) products in China, Taiyu merged with SmartHeat Inc. (“SmartHeat”) on April 14, 2008. SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Siping”), was incorporated on June 12, 2009 by SmartHeat, and is engaged in manufacture of PHEs. SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Energy”), was incorporated on April 12, 2010 by one of SmartHeat’s subsidiary - SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Investment”), and is engaged in research, development, manufacturing and sales of energy products. Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd. (“Ruicheng”), is a joint venture with 51% invested by SmartHeat on January 7, 2011, and is engaged in the design and manufacture of heat meters. Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (“XinRui”), is a joint venture with 46% invested by SmartHeat in April 2012, and is engaged in research and development, production and selling of heat meters and automatic control of heat supply network (collectively, the “Companies”).

On August 23 2013, SmartHeat formed two new wholly-owned subsidiaries in the State of Nevada, Heat HP Inc., and HEAT PHE Inc. On August 23, 2013, SmartHeat Inc., the Companies United States parent company entered into Assignment Agreements with Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc., respectively. Under the Assignment Agreements, SmartHeat agreed to transfer 100% of its right, title and interest in certain subsidiaries to Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc. The reorganization was performed so SmartHeat’s subsidiaries would be organized along their respective operating segments with Heat HP holding those subsidiaries that operated in the heat pumps and related products segment and Heat PHE holding those subsidiaries that operated in the plate heating equipment, meters and related products segment.

After the assignment and prior to the 40% equity interest sale of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui on December 30, 2013, Heat PHE Inc., owned 100% of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy and 51% of Hohhot Ruicheng, and SmartHeat owned 46% of XinRui.

On December 30, 2013, SmartHeat closed the transaction contemplated by the EIPA dated October 10, 2013, whereby the buyers purchased 40% of the equity interests in Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui. The purchase price was RMB 5,000,000.

SmartHeat retained an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Companies from the buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which terminated on February 28, 2014. On March 27, 2014 the buyers exercised their option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in the Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000. SmartHeat will seek the approval of its shareholders prior to completing the sale. In the event such approval is not obtained, the buyers may terminate the EIPA. Should the buyers exercise their option to purchase the additional 40% equity interest and shareholders approve the sale, SmartHeat has the option to require the buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000. The closing of transaction will be scheduled to occur after satisfaction of the conditions set forth in the EIPA, including, without limitation, approval of the transaction by a majority of SmartHeat’s shareholders entitled to vote.

The buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of SmartHeat’s subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai

and Yingkai Wang, SmartHeat's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of Presentation

The consolidated financial statements were prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America ("U.S. GAAP").

In the opinion of management, all adjustments (which include normal recurring adjustments) necessary to present a fair statement of the Companies consolidated and combined financial position as of March 31, 2014, its consolidated and combined results of operations and cash flows for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, as applicable, were made. The interim results of operations are not necessarily indicative of the operating results for the full fiscal year or any future periods.

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated and combined financial statements include the accounts of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, Jinhui, and SmartHeat Shenyang Energy, which are collectively referred to as the “Companies.” All significant intercompany accounts and transactions were eliminated in consolidation.

Noncontrolling Interest

The Companies follow Financial Accounting Standards Board’s (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 810, “Consolidation,” which established new standards governing the accounting for and reporting of noncontrolling interests (“NCIs”) in partially owned consolidated subsidiaries and the loss of control of subsidiaries. Certain provisions of this standard indicate, among other things, that NCIs, previously referred to as minority interests, be treated as a separate component of equity, not as a liability, as was previously the case, that increases and decreases in the parent’s ownership interest that leave control intact be treated as equity transactions rather than as step acquisitions or dilution gains or losses and that losses of a partially owned consolidated subsidiary be allocated to the NCI even when such allocation might result in a deficit balance. This standard also required changes to certain presentation and disclosure requirements. Losses attributable to the NCI in a subsidiary may exceed the NCI’s interests in the subsidiary’s equity. The excess attributable to the NCI is attributed to those interests. The NCI shall continue to be attributed its share of losses even if that attribution results in a deficit NCI balance.

After the sale of 40% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and Xinrui on December 30, 2013, the Companies’ noncontrolling interest consisted of 40% of Taiyu, Siping and SmartHeat Energy since then. For accounting purposes net loss of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy were not allocated to noncontrolling interest between December 30, 2013 and December 31, 2013, as the change in ownership interest may not change financial results substantially between December 30, 2013 and December 31, 2013.

Use of Estimates

In preparing the financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP, management makes estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements, as well as the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Significant estimates, required by management, include the recoverability of long-lived assets, allowance for doubtful accounts and the reserve for obsolete and slow-moving inventories. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Cash and Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, the Companies consider all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Companies maintained restricted cash deposit in several bank accounts for the purposes described below.

	2014	2013
	(In millions)	
Support of performance guarantee	\$ 0.39	\$ 1.04
Support of bank acceptance	0.78	1.30
Support of letter of credit	0.02	0.008
Total restricted cash - current	\$ 1.19	\$ 2.35
Performance guarantee -- noncurrent	\$ 0.24	\$ 0.12

Accounts and Retentions Receivable

The Companies maintain reserves for potential credit losses on accounts receivable. Management reviews the composition of accounts receivable and analyzes historical bad debts, customer concentrations, customer credit worthiness, current economic trends and changes in customer payment patterns to evaluate the adequacy of these reserves. Based on historical collection activity, the Companies had allowances of \$53.51 million and \$46.42 million at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

At March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Companies had retentions receivable from customers for product quality assurance of \$3.92 and \$4.14 million, respectively. The retention rate varies from 5% to 20% of the sales price with variable terms from 3 to 24 months depending on the shipping date, and for PHE Units, the customer acceptance date, of the products and the number of heating seasons that the warranty period covers. The Companies had allowances of \$0 million and \$0 at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

Accounts receivable is net of unearned interest of \$26,416 and \$26,655 at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively. Unearned interest is imputed interest on accounts receivable with due dates over 1 year from the invoice date discounted at the Companies' borrowing rate of 6.15% at December 31, 2012. The Companies did not record additional unearned interest after December 31, 2012 due to no long-term accounts receivable.

Bad Debt Allowance

The Companies record approximately 50% of accounts receivable aged over 180 days from the payment due date and 100% accounts receivable aged over 360 days from the payment due date as bad debt allowance. Management of the Companies further analyzes each individual customer for which it was taken a bad debt allowance to further assess the likelihood of collectability. Customers which are either state-owned or have a history of support from the state, or larger companies with long operating histories, that management of the Companies believe the chance of non-payment will be remote, are excluded for the purpose of calculating bad debt allowance.

Advance to Suppliers

The Companies make advances to certain vendors to purchase raw material and equipment for production. The advances are interest-free and unsecured.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined on a moving weighted-average basis. The difference is recorded as a cost of goods sold, if the current market value is lower than their historical cost. In addition, the Companies make an inventory impairment provision analysis at each period end for inventory held over 360 days. Cost of work in progress and finished goods comprises direct material, direct labor and an allocated portion of production overheads.

Certain raw materials, such as stainless steel products, plates, shims, gaskets, and pump valves, require longer than normal procurement periods, or “lead times,” with some procurement periods running longer than six months. To guarantee availability of raw materials for production and sales, the Companies, based on historical sale patterns, estimate and purchase material for the upcoming period.

As part of inventory impairment analysis, the Companies perform an evaluation of raw materials stored over one year and not anticipated to be consumed, and an evaluation of potential impairment to the quality of these raw materials. If management anticipates that obsolete raw materials in inventory can be utilized and will be consumed within the next six months through new customer orders or substitute orders, no impairment is recorded. The Companies collect information about delayed and canceled contracts and met with affected customers to discuss their financing situation and their projections of future orders. Finished goods manufactured for delayed and canceled contracts that the Companies do not expect to be reinstated and contracts for which the Companies have been unable to find substitute customers become impaired.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost, net of accumulated depreciation. Expenditures for maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred; additions, renewals and betterments are capitalized. When property and equipment are retired or otherwise disposed of, the related cost and accumulated depreciation are removed from the respective accounts and any gain or loss is included in operations. Depreciation of property and equipment is provided using the straight-line method with a 10% salvage value and estimated lives as follows:

Buildings	20 years
Vehicles	5 years
Office equipment	5 years
Production equipment	5-10 years

Land Use Rights

Right to use land is stated at cost less accumulated amortization. Amortization is provided using the straight-line method over 50 years.

Warranties

The Companies offer to all customers standard warranties on its products for one or two heating seasons depending on the terms negotiated. The Companies accrue for warranty costs based on estimates of the costs that may be incurred under its warranty obligations. The warranty expense and related accrual is included in the Companies’ selling expenses and other payables respectively, and is recorded when revenue is recognized. Factors that affect the Companies’ warranty liability include the number of units sold, its estimates of anticipated rates of warranty claims,

costs per claim and estimated support labor costs and the associated overhead. The Companies periodically assess the adequacy of its recorded warranty liabilities and adjusts the amounts as necessary.

Activity in the Companies' warranty reserve from January 1, 2013, to March 31, 2014, is as follows:

	2014	2013
Beginning balance	\$ 318,846	\$ 282,739
Provisions	206,207	301,920
Actual costs incurred	(163,517)	(265,813)
Ending balance in current liabilities (Note 12)	\$ 361,536	\$ 318,846

Research and Development Costs

Research and development ("R&D") costs are expensed as incurred and included in general and administrative expenses. These costs primarily consist of cost of materials used, salaries paid for the Companies' development department and fees paid to third parties. R&D costs for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, were \$157,371 and \$122,437, respectively.

Revenue Recognition

The Companies' revenue recognition policies comply with SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin ("SAB") 104 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605). Sales revenue is recognized when PHEs are delivered, and for PHE Units when customer acceptance occurs, the price is fixed or determinable, no other significant obligations of the Companies exist and collectability is reasonably assured. Payments received before all of the relevant criteria for revenue recognition met are recorded as unearned revenue under "Advance from customers."

The Companies' sales generally provide for 30% of the purchase price on placement of an order, 30% on delivery, 30% upon installation and acceptance of the equipment after customer testing and 10% no later than the termination of the standard warranty period, which ranges from 3 to 24 months from the acceptance date.

Due to the slowdown of the Chinese economy and tightened monetary policy, and to attract and retain customers, the Companies' subsidiaries adjusted their contract and payment terms to permit more flexible and longer payment terms.

Sales revenue is the invoiced value of goods, net of value-added tax ("VAT"). All of the Companies' products sold in the PRC are subject to a VAT of 17% of gross sales price. This VAT may be offset by the VAT paid by the Companies on raw materials and other materials purchased in China and included in the cost of producing the Companies' finished product. The Companies recorded VAT payable and VAT receivable net of payments in the financial statements. The Companies file VAT tax returns on line with PRC tax authorities and offsets the payables against the receivables.

Sales and purchases are recorded net of VAT collected and paid as the Companies act as an agent for the government. VAT taxes are not affected by the income tax holiday.

Sales returns and allowances were \$0 for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013. The Companies do not provide a right of return, price protection or any other concessions to its customers.

The Companies provide a standard warranty to all customers, which is not considered an additional service; rather, an integral part of the product's sale. The Companies believe the existence of its standard product warranty in a sales contract does not constitute a deliverable in the arrangement and thus there is no need to apply the EITF 00-21 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605-25) separation and allocation model for a multiple deliverable arrangement. SFAS 5 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 450) specifically addresses the accounting for standard warranties and neither SAB 104 nor EITF 00-21 supersedes SFAS 5. The Companies believe that accounting for its standard warranty pursuant to SFAS 5 does not impact revenue recognition because the cost of honoring the warranty can be reliably estimated.

The Companies charge for after-sales services provided after the expiration of the warranty period, with after-sales services mainly consisting of cleaning PHEs and repairing and exchanging parts. The Companies recognize such revenue when the service is provided. For the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, revenue from after-sales services after the expiration of the warranty period was \$2,965 and \$777, respectively, which was recorded in other income.

Cost of Goods Sold

Cost of goods sold ("COGS") consists primarily of material costs and direct labor and manufacturing overhead that are directly attributable to the products. Write-down of inventories to the lower of cost or market is also recorded in COGS. The Companies also record inventory reserve for inventories aging over 360 days to COGS.

Advance from Customers

The Companies record payments received from customers in advance of their orders to advance account. These orders normally are delivered within a reasonable period of time based upon contract terms and customer demand.

Statement of Cash Flows

In accordance with SFAS No. 95, "Statement of Cash Flows," codified in FASB ASC Topic 230, cash flows from the Companies' operations are calculated based upon the local currencies. As a result, amounts shown on the statement of cash flows may not necessarily agree with changes in the corresponding asset and liability on the balance sheet.

Foreign Currency Translation and Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The accounts of the Companies were translated into USD in accordance with SFAS No. 52, “Foreign Currency Translation” (codified in FASB ASC Topic 830). According to SFAS No. 52, all assets and liabilities were translated at the exchange rate on the balance sheet date, stockholders’ equity was translated at the historical rates and statement of operations items were translated at the average exchange rate for the period. The resulting translation adjustments are reported under other comprehensive income in accordance with SFAS No. 130, “Reporting Comprehensive Income” (codified in FASB ASC Topic 220).

The RMB to USD exchange rates in effect as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, and the average exchange rates for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013 are as following. The exchange rates used in translation from RMB to USD were published by State Administration of Foreign Exchange of the People’s Republic of China (“SAFE”).

	Average Exchange Rate		Balance Sheet Date	
	For the Three Months Ended		Exchange Rate	
	3/31/14	3/31/13	3/31/14	12/31/13
RMB - USD	6.1180	6.2785	6.1521	6.0969

New Accounting Pronouncements

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-01, Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323), Accounting for Investments in Qualified Affordable Housing Projects. The objective of this Update is to provide guidance on accounting for investments by a reporting entity in flow-through limited liability entities that manage or invest in affordable housing projects that qualify for the low-income housing tax credit. The amendments in this Update permit reporting entities to make an accounting policy election to account for their investments in qualified affordable housing projects using the proportional amortization method if certain conditions are met. The amendments in this Update should be applied retrospectively to all periods presented. A reporting entity that uses the effective yield method to account for its investments in qualified affordable housing projects before the date of adoption may continue to apply the effective yield method for those preexisting investments. The amendments in this Update are effective for public business entities for annual periods and interim reporting periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Companies’ financial statements.

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-05, Service Concession Arrangements (Topic 853), The objective of this Update is to specify that an operating entity should not account for a service concession arrangement within the scope of this Update as a lease in accordance with Topic 840, Leases. Service concession arrangements may become more prevalent in the United States as public-sector entities seek alternative ways to provide public services on a more efficient and cost-effective basis. The amendments apply to an operating entity of a service concession arrangement entered into with a public-sector entity grantor when the arrangement meets certain conditions. The amendments in this Update should be applied on a modified retrospective basis to service concession arrangements that exist at the beginning of an entity’s fiscal year of adoption. The modified retrospective approach requires the cumulative effect of applying this Update to arrangements existing at the beginning of the period of adoption to be recognized as an adjustment to the opening retained earnings balance for the annual period of adoption. The amendments are effective for a public business entity for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Companies’ financial statements.

3. INVENTORIES

Inventories at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, were as follows:

	2014	2013
Raw materials	\$ 40,349,783	\$ 41,378,896
Work in process	8,966,554	6,216,166
Finished goods	10,084,498	10,684,380
Total	59,400,835	58,279,442
Inventory allowance	(10,266,602)	(9,491,566)
Inventories, net	\$ 49,134,233	\$ 48,787,876

4. NOTES RECEIVABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

The Companies sold goods to its customers and received commercial notes (bank acceptance) from them in lieu of payments for accounts receivable. The Companies discounted the commercial notes with the bank or endorsed the commercial notes to vendors for payment of their own obligations or to get cash from third parties. Most of the commercial notes have a maturity of less than six months. As of March 31, 2014, the Companies were contingently liable for the notes endorsed to vendors of \$0.22 million.

5. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT, NET

Property and equipment consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Buildings	\$ 4,935,499	\$ 4,980,184
Production equipment	6,539,614	6,593,287
Office equipment	911,527	918,728
Vehicles	686,990	693,210
Total	13,073,630	13,185,409
Less: accumulated depreciation	(4,857,738)	(4,638,369)
Property & equipment, net	\$ 8,215,892	\$ 8,547,040

Depreciation for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013 was \$262,400 and \$263,000, respectively.

6. OTHER RECEIVABLES, PREPAYMENTS AND DEPOSITS

Other receivables, prepayments and deposits consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively:

	2014	2013
Advance to third parties	\$ 10,589,716	\$ 10,059,572
Deposit for public bids of sales contracts	577,375	704,175
Prepayment for freight, insurance, advertisement and consulting expenses	37,306	17,446
Other deposits	67,287	51,724
Advance to employees	483,854	588,114
Advance to HP segment	22,010,204	21,900,731
Others	848,742	580,681
Total	34,614,484	33,902,443
Less: bad debt allowance	(8,675,350)	(7,557,501)
Other receivables (net), prepayments & deposits	\$ 25,939,134	\$ 26,344,942

Advance to third parties were short-term unsecured advances to unrelated parties with payment usually due within a year and includes an advance to Siping Beifang of RMB 22.13 million (\$3.60 million) that is non-interest bearing and with due date extended to September 2014, and an advance to an unrelated company of RMB 41.02 million (\$6.67 million) that is non-interest bearing and will be collected by the end of June 2014.

Deposits for public bidding represented the deposits for bidding on expected contracts, which will be returned to the Companies after the bidding process is completed, usually within three to four months from the payment date. Prepayment for freight, related insurance expenses and advertisement represented prepaid shipping and freight insurance expenses for customers and is generally repaid upon customer receipt of products and prepaid advertising expense.

Other deposits mainly consisted of deposits for rents, payroll expense and utilities. Advance to employees represented short-term loans to employees and advances for business trips and related expenses. Advance to HP segment represented receivables from other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc, including \$14.4 million receivable from Heat HP, Inc. for transferring the 98.8% ownership of SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd. ("SmartHeat

Pump”) by Taiyu to Heat HP Inc., the transfer is not completed as of this report date. Other receivables (consisting of advance to third parties and employees, deposit for public bids and others), prepayments and deposits are reimbursed or settled within 12 months.

7. INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Intangible assets consisted mainly of land use rights, trademarks, computer software, know-how technology, customer lists and covenants not to compete. All land in the PRC is government-owned and cannot be sold to any individual or company. However, the government grants the user a “land use right” to use the land. Taiyu acquired land use rights during 2005 for RMB 3,549,682 (\$0.44 million). In June 2009, SmartHeat Siping acquired land use rights for \$3.1 million from SipingBeifang. In November 2010, SmartHeat Energy, acquired land use rights for \$10.10 million. The Companies have the right to use the land for 50 years and is amortizing such rights on a straight-line basis for 50 years.

Intangible assets consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively:

	Estimated Useful Life (In years)	2014	2013
Land use rights	50	\$ 15,031,461	\$ 15,167,552
Software	5	294,749	510,594
Total		15,326,210	15,678,146
Less: accumulated amortization		(1,414,264)	(1,515,069)
Intangible assets, net		\$ 13,911,946	\$ 14,163,077

Amortization of intangible assets for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, was \$124,700 and \$92,100, respectively. Annual amortization for the next five years from March 31, 2014, is expected to be \$356,279, \$323,147, \$319,168, \$319,168 and \$318,090, and \$12,276,094 thereafter.

8. CONSTRUCTION IN PROGRESS

The Companies had construction in progress of \$1.33 million at March 31, 2014, consisting of three ongoing projects.

1) SmartHeat Energy was building a factory for a total estimated cost of \$9.00 million, of which SmartHeat Energy paid \$0.47 million as of March 31, 2014. SmartHeat Energy halted construction of the factory resulting from returning the previously purchased land use right to the local authority where the factory was being built due to the adjustment of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority (see Note 12).

2) SmartHeat Siping has a construction project of \$36,000 for the laying of a foundation for its machinery installation. This foundation project will be completed by the end of June 2014.

3) Taiyu paid \$0.82 million for equipment and installation, this project was completed in July 2013 and is in the stage of final inspection. Taiyu expects to complete the inspection and put into operation by the end of June 2014.

9. MAJOR CUSTOMERS AND VENDORS

Two customers accounted for 35% of total sales for the three months ended March 31, 2014, each customer accounted for 17% and 18% of total sales, respectively. At March 31, 2014, total receivable from the two customers was \$1,438,641.

For the three months ended March 31, 2013, four customers accounted for 70% of the Companies' total sales, with each customer accounted for 31%, 16%, 12%, and 11% of total sales, respectively. At March 31, 2013, the total accounts receivable from these customers was \$9,670,657.

For the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, no vendors accounted for over 10% of the Companies' total purchases.

10. TAXES RECEIVABLE

Taxes receivable consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

	2014	2013
Income	\$ 179,142	\$ 180,764
Value-added	541,855	781,216
Other	6,089	6,144
Total	\$ 727,085	\$ 968,124

11. TAXES PAYABLE

Taxes payable consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Income	\$ -	\$ -
Value-added	-	99,456
Other	16,136	30,923
Total	\$ 16,136	\$ 130,379

12. ACCRUED LIABILITIES AND OTHER PAYABLES

Accrued liabilities and other payables consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Advance from third parties	\$ 3,233,042	\$ 3,262,314
Payable to Siping Beifang	2,290,186	2,306,184
Deposit from customer	2,961,428	2,988,240
Refund of land use right purchased	4,585,751	4,627,270
Others	463,413	539,728
Warranty reserve (See Note 2)	361,536	318,846
Accrued expenses	684,795	507,196
Advance from HP segment	16,241,254	16,388,299
Total	\$ 30,821,405	\$ 30,938,077

Advances from third parties were short-term, non-interest-bearing advances from third parties due on demand. Payable to Siping Beifang represented loans to them without interest and payable upon demand. Deposit from customer represented advance payment from a customer for SmartHeat Siping to execute the sales order; however, the customer wanted to cancel the order after SmartHeat Siping commenced manufacturing and the SmartHeat Siping refused to return the deposit claiming breach of the contract by the customer. The dispute was filed with the court and is currently docketed for trial.

Refund of land use right previously purchased represented the partial refund received for the land use right SmartHeat Energy purchased in November 2010. SmartHeat Energy later cancelled the purchase due to the adjustments of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority. The local government agreed to the cancellation and refunded SmartHeat Energy \$4.59 million as of December 31, 2013, and was committed to refund SmartHeat Energy the remaining purchase price. On May 21, 2014, SmartHeat Energy and Shenyang City Development and Land Resource Bureau Economy and Technology Development Office entered into an official agreement, whereby full purchase price of the land use right will be returned to SmartHeat Energy in installments within 5 days from the effective date of the official agreement. SmartHeat Energy will make the ownership change of the land use right within 3 days upon receiving the first installment of refund from the local authority effective on May 21, 2014. However, as of this report date, SmartHeat Energy did not receive first installment. Currently the land is used by the third party.

Advance from HP segment represented payables to other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc. Others represented payables for the Companies certain construction and installation projects, and miscellaneous expenses including postage, business insurance, employee benefits, project bidding fee, and medical insurance, etc. Accrued expenses mainly consisted of accrued payroll of \$0.31 million, accrued welfare, interest and utility.

13. NOTES PAYABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

Notes payable represented the conversion of accounts payable into notes payable, which were issued by a bank. The Companies deposited a portion of the acceptance amount into the bank as collateral. The terms of the notes range from 3-6 months and bear no interest. At March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Companies deposited \$0.78 million and \$1.30 million with the bank as restricted cash for the bank issuing the notes (See note 2). The restricted cash is refundable when the notes are repaid.

14. LOANS PAYABLE

Short-Term Bank Loans

The Companies were obligated for the following short-term loans as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013	Subsidiary obligated
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 7,200,000 entered into on February 20, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6% with maturity on February 19, 2015.	\$ 1,170,332	\$ -	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 2,640,565 entered into on January 3, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on July 29, 2014. This loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	429,213	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 7,935,243 entered into on January 3, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on July 29, 2014. The loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,289,843	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 16,080,000 entered into on January 16, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 8, 2014. The loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	2,613,741	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 4,685,723 entered into on January 22, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 20, 2014. The loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	761,646	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,377,441 entered into on January 22, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 20, 2014. The loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	874,082	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 13,344,190 entered into on June 26, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.16% with maturity on January 18, 2014. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	2,188,684	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on November 30, 2012. The loan bore interest at 7.87% with maturity on November 22, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	1,625,461	1,640,178	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 40,000,000 entered into on March 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on March 10, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Siping, HeatPump and management of Chinese subsidiaries. This loan was repaid at maturity.	-	6,560,711	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on May 21, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on May 20, 2014. This loan was repaid at maturity.	1,625,461	1,640,178	Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on August 29, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on August 29, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	812,731	820,089	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on September 4, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on September 4, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	812,731	820,089	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 30,000,000 entered into on August 8, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.90% with maturity on August 7, 2014.	4,876,384	4,920,533	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on September 18, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on September 17, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,609,207	1,623,776	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on October 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on October 10, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,609,207	1,623,776	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 16,000,000 entered into on July 10, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on January 9, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable. This loan was repaid at maturity.	-	2,624,285	Taiyu
TOTAL	\$ 20,110,039	\$ 24,462,299	

The banks sometimes require loan guarantee provided by a third party to the Companies, the third party loan guarantor was Liaoning Wugang Metal Trading Co., Ltd. (“Liaoning Wugang”), with a maximum guarantee of RMB 46 million (\$7.32 million). The guarantee is for the loans entered from February 20, 2012 to August 16, 2013, with the guarantee length equal to the loan term; the guarantee service was extended for the loans entered or will be entered from September 18, 2013 to September 12, 2014 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the maximum guarantee amount was revised to RMB 44 million (\$7.05 million). The Companies were not required to pay any guarantee fees. However, the Companies have contracted to provide similar guarantees for up to RMB 20 million (\$3.18 million) to Liaoning Guorui Commercial Trading Co., Ltd. (“Guorui”). The guarantee is for the loans entered from January 12, 2012 to January 11, 2013 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the Companies do not require Guorui to pay any guarantee fees. The Companies did not extend the guarantee term for Guorui after January 11, 2013. These arrangements are common to the banking industry in China, and there are no other relationships between the Companies and Liaoning Wugang or Guorui, both of whom were referred to the Companies by the lending bank. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Companies did not have any loan guarantees from Liaoning Wugang.

Long-Term Bank Loan

Taiyu entered into a long-term loan of \$2,113,100 (RMB 13 million) with China Construction Bank on November 30, 2013 with maturity on November 29, 2015. The interest rate for the loan is variable currently at 6.46%, and to be paid on the 20th of each month. This loan is guaranteed by Taiyu’s building and land.

15. DEFERRED TAX ASSET (LIABILITY)

Deferred tax asset (liability) represented differences between the tax bases and book bases of bad debt allowance and provision of inventory impairment booked by the Companies, which was not allowed per tax purpose. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, deferred tax asset (liability) consisted of the following:

	2014	2013
Deferred tax asset - current (bad debt allowance)	\$ 8,370,193	\$ 7,267,745
Deferred tax asset - current (inventory allowance)	2,018,377	1,864,883
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance to other receivable)	1,698,801	1,534,723
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance for advance to supplier)	386,826	375,512
Deferred tax asset – current (reserve for warranty)	39,339	33,282
Less: valuation allowance	(12,513,536)	(11,076,145)
Deferred tax assets, net	\$ -	\$ -

16. INCOME TAXES

Taiyu is governed by the Income Tax Law of the PRC concerning privately-run enterprises, which are generally subject to tax at 25% on income reported in the statutory financial statements after appropriate tax adjustments. Under the Income Tax Law that became effective January 1, 2008, new high-tech enterprises given special support by the PRC government are subject to an income tax rate of 15%. Taiyu has been classified as a high-tech enterprise since 2009 and eligible for an income tax rate of 15% through 2014. Local PRC government reviews the high-tech status of such enterprises annually.

SmartHeat Siping and SmartHeat Energy are subject to the regular 25% PRC income tax rate.

The following table reconciles the statutory rates to the Companies' effective tax (benefit) rate for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013:

	2014	2013
PRC statutory tax (benefit) rates	(25.0)%	(25.0)%
Effect of tax holiday	9.0%	(1.6)%
Valuation allowance	16.0%	26.6%
Tax benefit per financial statements	-%	-%

17. STATUTORY RESERVES AND RESTRICTED NET ASSETS

Relevant PRC statutory laws and regulations permit payments of dividends by the Companies to foreign holding company only out of the subsidiary's retained earnings, if any, as determined in accordance with PRC accounting standards and regulations. The results of operations reflected in the financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP differ from those reflected in the statutory financial statements of the Companies.

In accordance with the PRC Regulations on Enterprises with Foreign Investment and their articles of association, a foreign-invested enterprise ("FIE") established in the PRC is required to provide certain statutory reserves, which are appropriated from net profit as reported in the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. An FIE is required to allocate at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit to the surplus reserve until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. Appropriations to other funds are at the discretion of the board of directors for all FIEs. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. Additionally, shareholders of an FIE are required to contribute capital to satisfy the registered capital requirement of the FIE. Until such contribution of capital is satisfied, the FIE is not allowed to repatriate profits to its shareholders, unless otherwise approved by the State Administration of Foreign Exchange. Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, and Ruicheng were established as FIEs and therefore are subject to the above-mandated restrictions on distributable profits.

Additionally, in accordance with the Company Law of the PRC, a domestic enterprise is required to provide surplus reserve at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. A domestic enterprise is also required to provide discretionary surplus reserve, at the discretion of the board of directors, from the profits determined in accordance with the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. SmartHeat Energy was established as domestic enterprises and therefore are subject to the above-mentioned restrictions on distributable profits.

As a result of these PRC laws and regulations that require annual appropriations of 10% of after-tax income to be set aside prior to payment of dividends as general reserve fund, the Companies are restricted in their ability to transfer a portion of their net assets to the foreign holding company as a dividend.

18. COMMITMENTS

Lease Agreements

The Companies leased offices for its sales representative in several different cities under various one-year, non-cancellable and renewable operating lease agreements. Rental expense for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, was \$48,015 and \$66,085, respectively.

19. CONTINGENCIES

The Companies' operations in the PRC are subject to specific considerations and significant risks not typically associated with companies in North America and Western Europe. These include risks associated with, among others, the political, economic and legal environments in China and foreign currency exchange. The Companies results may be adversely affected by changes in PRC government policies with respect to laws and regulations, anti-inflationary measures, currency conversion and remittance abroad and rates and methods of taxation, among other things.

The Companies' sales, purchases and expense transactions in China are denominated in RMB and all of the Companies' assets and liabilities in China are also denominated in RMB. The RMB is not freely convertible into foreign currencies

under the current PRC law. In China, foreign exchange transactions are required by law to be transacted only by authorized financial institutions. Remittances in currencies other than RMB may require certain supporting documentation in order to affect the remittance.

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED BALANCE SHEETS
(UNAUDITED)

	December 31, 2013	December 31, 2012
ASSETS		
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash & equivalents	\$9,283,788	\$14,291,095
Restricted cash	2,345,258	892,904
Accounts receivable, net	14,822,112	32,536,975
Retentions receivable	4,141,585	3,655,246
Advances to suppliers, net	3,572,023	669,993
Other receivables (net), prepayments and deposits	26,344,942	27,062,518
Inventories, net	48,787,876	51,066,467
Taxes receivable	968,124	-
Notes receivable - bank acceptances	2,529,954	2,192,810
Total current assets	112,795,662	132,368,008
NONCURRENT ASSETS		
Restricted cash	123,398	-
Retentions receivable	-	421,731
Advance to supplier for equipment	1,276,247	1,744,056
Construction in progress	1,340,905	1,298,841
Property and equipment, net	8,547,040	8,981,251
Intangible assets, net	14,163,077	14,076,547
Total noncurrent assets	25,450,667	26,522,426
TOTAL ASSETS	\$138,246,329	\$158,890,434
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable	\$7,474,236	\$8,202,196
Advance from customers	1,875,894	4,583,158
Taxes payable	130,379	729,138
Accrued liabilities and other payables	30,938,077	18,036,278
Notes payable - bank acceptances	2,590,025	736,698
Loans payable	24,462,299	26,155,437
Total current liabilities	67,470,910	58,442,905
LONG-TERM LOAN	2,132,231	-

COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

Paid-in capital	53,849,023	77,340,955
Statutory reserve	4,608,375	4,615,331
Accumulated other comprehensive income	7,517,274	9,985,797
Retained earning (accumulated deficit)	(24,916,298)	7,703,059
Total Company stockholders' equity	41,058,374	99,645,142
NONCONTROLLING INTEREST	27,584,814	802,387
TOTAL EQUITY	68,643,188	100,447,529
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	\$ 138,246,329	\$ 158,890,434

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(UNAUDITED)

	YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31,	
	2013	2012
Net sales	\$38,915,416	\$39,877,236
Cost of goods sold	35,659,348	24,603,587
Gross profit	3,256,068	15,273,649
Operating expenses		
Selling	5,084,636	7,704,390
General and administrative	5,582,360	5,985,893
Provision for bad debts	24,638,062	18,499,039
Provision for advance to supplier	(682,973)	2,216,156
Total operating expenses	34,622,085	34,405,478
Loss from operations	(31,366,017)	(19,131,829)
Non-operating income (expenses)		
Investment income	153,237	142,411
Interest income	79,704	190,574
Interest expense	(1,758,210)	(1,644,001)
Financial expense	(73,567)	(20,259)
Foreign exchange transaction gain (loss)	(9,478)	5,069
Other income, net	470,730	1,298,210
Total non-operating expenses, net	(1,137,584)	(27,996)
Loss before income tax	(32,503,601)	(19,159,825)
Income tax expense	26,725	585,892
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(32,530,326)	(19,745,717)
Less: Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(305,710)	(737)
Net loss to SmartHeat Inc. - disposed entities	(32,224,616)	(19,744,980)
Other comprehensive item		
Foreign currency translation gain (loss) attributable to SmartHeat Inc. - disposed entities	(2,427,319)	442,960
Foreign currency translation gain attributable to noncontrolling interest of disposed entities	18,939	1,960

Comprehensive loss attributable to SmartHeat Inc. - disposed entities	\$(34,651,935)	\$(19,302,020)
---	-----------------	-----------------

Comprehensive (loss) gain attributable to noncontrolling interest of disposed entities	\$(286,771)	\$1,223
--	--------------	---------

70

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(UNAUDITED)

YEARS ENDED
DECEMBER 31,
2013 2012

CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:

Loss including noncontrolling interest	\$(32,530,326)	\$(19,745,717)
Adjustments to reconcile loss including noncontrolling interest to net cash used in operating activities:		
Investment income	(153,237)	(142,411)
Depreciation and amortization	1,458,014	1,452,929
Provision for bad debts	24,638,062	18,499,039
Provision for inventory impairment	5,934,938	208,159
Provision for advance to suppliers	(682,973)	2,216,156
Loss on disposal of fixed assets	19,133	-
Unearned interest on accounts receivable	26,755	(45,244)
(Increase) decrease in assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	(898,871)	(2,921,154)
Retentions receivable	60,346	5,543
Advances to suppliers	(1,645,706)	10,623,901
Other receivables, prepayments and deposits	(4,461,236)	(7,681,929)
Inventories	(2,271,248)	(6,512,366)
Taxes receivable	(821,932)	
Accounts payable	1,156,897	(4,729,599)
Advance from customers	(2,795,259)	1,127,240
Taxes payable	(698,490)	(286,567)
Accrued liabilities and other payables	11,447,934	260,830
Net cash used in operating activities	(2,217,199)	(7,671,190)

CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:

Change in restricted cash	(1,518,908)	1,776,838
Acquisition of property & equipment	(589,621)	(723,046)
Cash paid for construction in progress	(1,851)	(771,370)
Cash disposed from equity interest sale	(399,241)	-
Notes receivable	(264,229)	(666,355)
Net cash used in investing activities	(2,773,850)	(383,933)

CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:

Proceeds from bank loans	24,483,311	22,400,000
Repayment on bank loans	(24,846,320)	(9,029,703)
Notes payable	-	(2,538,661)
Capital contribution	-	1,700,050

Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities	(363,009)	12,531,686
EFFECT OF EXCHANGE RATE CHANGE ON CASH & EQUIVALENTS	346,751	44,329
NET (DECREASE) INCREASE IN CASH & EQUIVALENTS	(5,007,307)	4,520,892
CASH & EQUIVALENTS, BEGINNING OF YEAR	14,291,095	9,770,203
CASH & EQUIVALENTS, END OF YEAR	\$9,283,788	\$14,291,095
Supplemental cash flow data:		
Income tax paid	\$720,001	\$325,309
Interest paid	\$1,663,459	\$1,644,001

SMARTHEAT TAIYU (SHENGYANG) ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT SIPING BEIFANG ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD
SMARTHEAT (SHENGYANG) ENERGY EQUIPMENT CO., LTD
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED AND COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2013 AND DECEMBER 31, 2012 (UNAUDITED)

1. ORGANIZATION AND DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS

SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“Taiyu”), is engaged in the design, manufacture, sale and servicing of plate heat exchange (“PHE”) products in China, Taiyu merged with SmartHeat Inc. (“SmartHeat”) on April 14, 2008. SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Siping”), was incorporated on June 12, 2009 by SmartHeat, and is engaged in manufacture of PHEs. SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Energy”), was incorporated on April 12, 2010 by one of SmartHeat’s subsidiary - SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Investment”), and is engaged in research, development, manufacturing and sales of energy products. Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd. (“Ruicheng”), is a joint venture with 51% invested by SmartHeat on January 7, 2011, and is engaged in the design and manufacture of heat meters. Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (“XinRui”), is a joint venture with 46% invested by SmartHeat in April 2012, and is engaged in research and development, production and selling of heat meters and automatic control of heat supply network (collectively, the “Companies”).

On August 23 2013, SmartHeat formed two new wholly-owned subsidiaries in the State of Nevada, Heat HP Inc., and HEAT PHE Inc. On August 23, 2013, SmartHeat Inc., the Companies United States parent company entered into Assignment Agreements with Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc., respectively. Under the Assignment Agreements, SmartHeat agreed to transfer 100% of its right, title and interest in certain subsidiaries to Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc. The reorganization was performed so SmartHeat’s subsidiaries would be organized along their respective operating segments with Heat HP holding those subsidiaries that operated in the heat pumps and related products segment and Heat PHE holding those subsidiaries that operated in the plate heating equipment, meters and related products segment.

After the assignment and prior to the 40% equity interest sale of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui on December 30, 2013, Heat PHE Inc., owned 100% of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy and 51% of Hohhot Ruicheng, and SmartHeat owned 46% of XinRui.

On December 30, 2013, SmartHeat closed the transaction contemplated by the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement (“EIPA”) dated October 10, 2013, whereby the buyers purchased 40% of the equity interests in Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and XinRui. The purchase price was RMB 5,000,000.

SmartHeat retained an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Companies from the buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which terminated on February 28, 2014. On March 27, 2014 the buyers exercised their option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in the Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000. SmartHeat will seek the approval of its shareholders prior to completing the sale. In the event such approval is not obtained, the buyers may terminate the EIPA. Should the buyers exercise their option to purchase the additional 40% equity interest and shareholders approve the sale, SmartHeat has the option to require the buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000. The closing of transaction will be scheduled to occur after satisfaction of the conditions set forth in the EIPA, including, without limitation, approval of the transaction by a majority of SmartHeat’s shareholders entitled to vote.

The buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of SmartHeat’s subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai

and Yingkai Wang, SmartHeat's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of Presentation

The consolidated financial statements were prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”).

In the opinion of management, all adjustments (which include normal recurring adjustments) necessary to present a fair statement of the Companies consolidated and combined financial position as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, its consolidated and combined results of operations and cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, as applicable, were made.

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated and combined financial statements include the accounts of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, and SmartHeat Shenyang Energy as of December 31, 2013; and included accounts of Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Shenyang Energy and Ruicheng (51% owned) as of December 31, 2012, which are collectively referred to as the “Companies.” All significant intercompany accounts and transactions were eliminated in consolidation.

Noncontrolling Interest

The Companies follow Financial Accounting Standards Board’s (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 810, “Consolidation,” which established new standards governing the accounting for and reporting of noncontrolling interests (“NCIs”) in partially owned consolidated subsidiaries and the loss of control of subsidiaries. Certain provisions of this standard indicate, among other things, that NCIs, previously referred to as minority interests, be treated as a separate component of equity, not as a liability, as was previously the case, that increases and decreases in the parent’s ownership interest that leave control intact be treated as equity transactions rather than as step acquisitions or dilution gains or losses and that losses of a partially owned consolidated subsidiary be allocated to the NCI even when such allocation might result in a deficit balance. This standard also required changes to certain presentation and disclosure requirements. Losses attributable to the NCI in a subsidiary may exceed the NCI’s interests in the subsidiary’s equity. The excess attributable to the NCI is attributed to those interests. The NCI shall continue to be attributed its share of losses even if that attribution results in a deficit NCI balance.

As of December 31, 2012, the Companies’ noncontrolling interest consisted of 49% of Ruicheng. After the sale of 40% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng and Xinrui on December 30, 2013, the Companies’ noncontrolling interest consisted of 40% of Taiyu, Siping and SmartHeat Energy since then. For accounting purposes net loss of Taiyu, Siping, SmartHeat Energy were not allocated to noncontrolling interest between December 30, 2013 and December 31, 2013, as the change in ownership interest may not change financial results substantially between December 30, 2013 and December 31, 2013.

Use of Estimates

In preparing the financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP, management makes estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements, as well as the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Significant estimates, required by management, include the recoverability of long-lived assets, allowance for doubtful accounts and the reserve for obsolete and slow-moving inventories. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Cash and Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, the Companies consider all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, the Companies maintained restricted cash deposit in several bank accounts for the purposes described below.

	2013	2012
	(In millions)	
Support of performance guarantee	\$ 1.04	\$ 0.52
Support of bank acceptance	1.30	0.37
Support of letter of credit	0.01	-
Total restricted cash - current	\$ 2.35	\$ 0.89
Performance guarantee -- noncurrent	\$ 0.12	-

Accounts and Retentions Receivable

The Companies maintain reserves for potential credit losses on accounts receivable. Management reviews the composition of accounts receivable and analyzes historical bad debts, customer concentrations, customer credit worthiness, current economic trends and changes in customer payment patterns to evaluate the adequacy of these reserves. Based on historical collection activity, the Companies had allowances of \$46.42 million and \$26.72 million at December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively.

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, the Companies had retentions receivable from customers for product quality assurance of \$4.14 and \$4.08 million, respectively. The retention rate varies from 5% to 20% of the sales price with variable terms from 3 to 24 months depending on the shipping date, and for PHE Units, the customer acceptance date, of the products and the number of heating seasons that the warranty period covers. The Companies had allowances of \$0 at December 31, 2013 and 2012.

Accounts receivable is net of unearned interest which is imputed interest on accounts receivable with due dates over 1 year from the invoice date discounted at the Companies' borrowing rate of 6.15% at December 31, 2012. The Companies did not record additional unearned interest after December 31, 2012 due to no long-term accounts receivable.

Bad Debt Allowance

The Companies record approximately 50% of accounts receivable aged over 180 days from the payment due date and 100% accounts receivable aged over 360 days from the payment due date as bad debt allowance. Management of the Companies further analyzes each individual customer for which it was taken a bad debt allowance to further assess the likelihood of collectability. Customers which are either state-owned or have a history of support from the state, or larger companies with long operating histories, that management of the Companies believe the chance of non-payment will be remote, are excluded for the purpose of calculating bad debt allowance.

Advance to Suppliers

The Companies make advances to certain vendors to purchase raw material and equipment for production. The advances are interest-free and unsecured.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined on a moving weighted-average basis. The difference is recorded as a cost of goods sold, if the current market value is lower than their historical cost. In addition, the Companies make an inventory impairment provision analysis at each period end for inventory held over 360 days. Cost of work in progress and finished goods comprises direct material, direct labor and an allocated portion of production overheads.

Certain raw materials, such as stainless steel products, plates, shims, gaskets, and pump valves, require longer than normal procurement periods, or "lead times," with some procurement periods running longer than six months. To guarantee availability of raw materials for production and sales, the Companies, based on historical sale patterns, estimate and purchase material for the upcoming period.

As part of inventory impairment analysis, the Companies perform an evaluation of raw materials stored over one year and not anticipated to be consumed, and an evaluation of potential impairment to the quality of these raw materials. If management anticipates that obsolete raw materials in inventory can be utilized and will be consumed within the next

six months through new customer orders or substitute orders, no impairment is recorded. The Companies collect information about delayed and canceled contracts and met with affected customers to discuss their financing situation and their projections of future orders. Finished goods manufactured for delayed and canceled contracts that the Companies do not expect to be reinstated and contracts for which the Companies have been unable to find substitute customers become impaired.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost, net of accumulated depreciation. Expenditures for maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred; additions, renewals and betterments are capitalized. When property and equipment are retired or otherwise disposed of, the related cost and accumulated depreciation are removed from the respective accounts and any gain or loss is included in operations. Depreciation of property and equipment is provided using the straight-line method with a 10% salvage value and estimated lives as follows:

Buildings	20 years
Vehicles	5 years
Office equipment	5 years
Production equipment	5-10 years

Land Use Rights

Right to use land is stated at cost less accumulated amortization. Amortization is provided using the straight-line method over 50 years.

Warranties

The Companies offer to all customers standard warranties on its products for one or two heating seasons depending on the terms negotiated. The Companies accrue for warranty costs based on estimates of the costs that may be incurred under its warranty obligations. The warranty expense and related accrual is included in the Companies' selling expenses and other payables respectively, and is recorded when revenue is recognized. Factors that affect the Companies' warranty liability include the number of units sold, its estimates of anticipated rates of warranty claims, costs per claim and estimated support labor costs and the associated overhead. The Companies periodically assess the adequacy of its recorded warranty liabilities and adjusts the amounts as necessary.

Activity in the Companies' warranty reserve from January 1, 2012, to December 31, 2013, is as follows:

	2013	2012
Beginning balance	\$ 282,739	\$ 282,739
Provisions	301,920	271,968
Actual costs incurred	(265,813)	(271,968)
Ending balance in current liabilities (Note 12)	\$ 318,846	\$ 282,739

Research and Development Costs

Research and development ("R&D") costs are expensed as incurred and included in general and administrative expenses. These costs primarily consist of cost of materials used, salaries paid for the Companies' development department and fees paid to third parties. R&D costs for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, were \$1,424,438 and \$1,501,953, respectively.

Revenue Recognition

The Companies' revenue recognition policies comply with SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin ("SAB") 104 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605). Sales revenue is recognized when PHEs are delivered, and for PHE Units when customer acceptance occurs, the price is fixed or determinable, no other significant obligations of the Companies exist and collectability is reasonably assured. Payments received before all of the relevant criteria for revenue recognition met are recorded as unearned revenue under "Advance from customers."

The Companies' sales generally provide for 30% of the purchase price on placement of an order, 30% on delivery, 30% upon installation and acceptance of the equipment after customer testing and 10% no later than the termination of the standard warranty period, which ranges from 3 to 24 months from the acceptance date.

Due to the slowdown of the Chinese economy and tightened monetary policy, and to attract and retain customers, the Companies' subsidiaries adjusted their contract and payment terms to permit more flexible and longer payment terms.

Sales revenue is the invoiced value of goods, net of value-added tax ("VAT"). All of the Companies' products sold in the PRC are subject to a VAT of 17% of gross sales price. This VAT may be offset by the VAT paid by the Companies on raw materials and other materials purchased in China and included in the cost of producing the Companies' finished product. The Companies recorded VAT payable and VAT receivable net of payments in the financial statements. The Companies file VAT tax returns on line with PRC tax authorities and offsets the payables against the receivables.

Sales and purchases are recorded net of VAT collected and paid as the Companies act as an agent for the government. VAT taxes are not affected by the income tax holiday.

Sales returns and allowances were \$0 for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012. The Companies do not provide a right of return, price protection or any other concessions to its customers.

The Companies provide a standard warranty to all customers, which is not considered an additional service; rather, an integral part of the product's sale. The Companies believe the existence of its standard product warranty in a sales contract does not constitute a deliverable in the arrangement and thus there is no need to apply the EITF 00-21 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605-25) separation and allocation model for a multiple deliverable arrangement. SFAS 5 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 450) specifically addresses the accounting for standard warranties and neither SAB 104 nor EITF 00-21 supersedes SFAS 5. The Companies believe that accounting for its standard warranty pursuant to SFAS 5 does not impact revenue recognition because the cost of honoring the warranty can be reliably estimated.

The Companies charge for after-sales services provided after the expiration of the warranty period, with after-sales services mainly consisting of cleaning PHEs and repairing and exchanging parts. The Companies recognize such revenue when the service is provided. For the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, revenue from after-sales services after the expiration of the warranty period was \$23,336 and \$233,029, respectively, which was recorded in other income.

Cost of Goods Sold

Cost of goods sold ("COGS") consists primarily of material costs and direct labor and manufacturing overhead that are directly attributable to the products. Write-down of inventories to the lower of cost or market is also recorded in COGS. The Companies also record inventory reserve for inventories aging over 360 days to COGS.

Advance from Customers

The Companies record payments received from customers in advance of their orders to advance account. These orders normally are delivered within a reasonable period of time based upon contract terms and customer demand.

Statement of Cash Flows

In accordance with SFAS No. 95, "Statement of Cash Flows," codified in FASB ASC Topic 230, cash flows from the Companies' operations are calculated based upon the local currencies. As a result, amounts shown on the statement of cash flows may not necessarily agree with changes in the corresponding asset and liability on the balance sheet.

Foreign Currency Translation and Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The accounts of the Companies were translated into USD in accordance with SFAS No. 52, “Foreign Currency Translation” (codified in FASB ASC Topic 830). According to SFAS No. 52, all assets and liabilities were translated at the exchange rate on the balance sheet date, stockholders’ equity was translated at the historical rates and statement of operations items were translated at the average exchange rate for the period. The resulting translation adjustments are reported under other comprehensive income in accordance with SFAS No. 130, “Reporting Comprehensive Income” (codified in FASB ASC Topic 220).

The RMB to USD exchange rates in effect as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, and the average exchange rates for the years ended December, 2013 and 2012 are as following. The exchange rates used in translation from RMB to USD were published by State Administration of Foreign Exchange of the People’s Republic of China (“SAFE”).

	Average Exchange Rate		Balance Sheet Date	
	For the Year Ended		Exchange Rate	
	12/31/13	12/31/12	12/31/13	12/31/12
RMB - USD	6.2142	6.3125	6.0969	6.2855

New Accounting Pronouncements

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-01, Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323), Accounting for Investments in Qualified Affordable Housing Projects. The objective of this Update is to provide guidance on accounting for investments by a reporting entity in flow-through limited liability entities that manage or invest in affordable housing projects that qualify for the low-income housing tax credit. The amendments in this Update permit reporting entities to make an accounting policy election to account for their investments in qualified affordable housing projects using the proportional amortization method if certain conditions are met. The amendments in this Update should be applied retrospectively to all periods presented. A reporting entity that uses the effective yield method to account for its investments in qualified affordable housing projects before the date of adoption may continue to apply the effective yield method for those preexisting investments. The amendments in this Update are effective for public business entities for annual periods and interim reporting periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Companies’ financial statements.

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-05, Service Concession Arrangements (Topic 853), The objective of this Update is to specify that an operating entity should not account for a service concession arrangement within the scope of this Update as a lease in accordance with Topic 840, Leases. Service concession arrangements may become more prevalent in the United States as public-sector entities seek alternative ways to provide public services on a more efficient and cost-effective basis. The amendments apply to an operating entity of a service concession arrangement entered into with a public-sector entity grantor when the arrangement meets certain conditions. The amendments in this Update should be applied on a modified retrospective basis to service concession arrangements that exist at the beginning of an entity’s fiscal year of adoption. The modified retrospective approach requires the cumulative effect of applying this Update to arrangements existing at the beginning of the period of adoption to be recognized as an adjustment to the opening retained earnings balance for the annual period of adoption. The amendments are effective for a public business entity for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Companies’ financial statements.

3. INVENTORIES

Inventories at December 31, 2013 and 2012, were as follows:

	2013	2012
Raw materials	\$ 41,378,896	\$ 32,754,840
Work in process	6,216,166	9,303,262
Finished goods	10,684,380	12,999,188
Total	58,279,442	55,057,290
Inventory allowance	(9,491,566)	(3,990,823)
Inventories, net	\$ 48,787,876	\$ 51,066,467

4. NOTES RECEIVABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

The Companies sold goods to its customers and received commercial notes (bank acceptance) from them in lieu of payments for accounts receivable. The Companies discounted the commercial notes with the bank or endorsed the commercial notes to vendors for payment of their own obligations or to get cash from third parties. Most of the commercial notes have a maturity of less than six months. As of December 31, 2013, the Companies were contingently liable for the notes endorsed to vendors of \$1.37 million.

5. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT, NET

Property and equipment consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012
Buildings	\$ 4,980,184	\$ 4,830,751
Production equipment	6,593,287	6,034,488
Office equipment	918,728	921,933
Vehicles	693,210	692,965
Total	13,185,409	12,480,137
Less: accumulated depreciation	(4,638,369)	(3,498,886)
Property & equipment, net	\$ 8,547,040	\$ 8,981,251

Depreciation for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012 was \$1,057,000 and \$1,036,000, respectively.

6. OTHER RECEIVABLES, PREPAYMENTS AND DEPOSITS

Other receivables, prepayments and deposits consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively:

	2013	2012
Advance to third parties	\$ 10,059,572	\$ 4,813,659
Deposit for public bids of sales contracts	704,175	1,375,101
Prepayment for freight, insurance, advertisement and consulting expenses	17,446	183,099
Other deposits	51,724	82,929
Advance to employees	588,114	701,553
Advance to HP segment	21,900,731	20,840,202
Others	580,681	342,120
Total	33,902,443	28,338,663

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

Less: bad debt allowance	(7,557,501)	(1,276,145)
Other receivables (net), prepayments & deposits	\$ 26,344,942	\$ 27,062,518

Advance to third parties were short-term unsecured advances to unrelated parties with payment usually due within a year and includes an advance to Siping Beifang of RMB 22.13 million (\$3.63 million) that is non-interest bearing and with due date extended to September 2014.

Deposits for public bidding represented the deposits for bidding on expected contracts, which will be returned to the Companies after the bidding process is completed, usually within three to four months from the payment date. Prepayment for freight, related insurance expenses and advertisement represented prepaid shipping and freight insurance expenses for customers and is generally repaid upon customer receipt of products and prepaid advertising expense.

Other deposits mainly consisted of deposits for rents, payroll expense and utilities. Advance to employees represented short-term loans to employees and advances for business trips and related expenses. Advance to HP segment represented receivables from other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc, including \$14.44 million receivable from Heat HP, Inc. for transferring the 98.8% ownership of SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Pump”) by Taiyu to Heat HP Inc., the transfer is not completed as of this report date. Other receivables (consisting of advance to third parties and employees, deposit for public bids and others), prepayments and deposits are reimbursed or settled within 12 months.

7. INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Intangible assets consisted mainly of land use rights, trademarks, computer software, know-how technology, customer lists and covenants not to compete. All land in the PRC is government-owned and cannot be sold to any individual or company. However, the government grants the user a “land use right” to use the land. Taiyu acquired land use rights during 2005 for RMB 3,549,682 (\$0.44 million). In June 2009, SmartHeat Siping acquired land use rights for \$3.1 million from SipingBeifang. In November 2010, SmartHeat Energy, acquired land use rights for \$10.10 million. The Companies have the right to use the land for 50 years and is amortizing such rights on a straight-line basis for 50 years.

Intangible assets consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively:

	Estimated Useful Life (In years)	2013	2012
Land use rights	50	\$ 15,167,552	\$ 14,712,441
Software	5	510,594	477,173
Total		15,678,146	15,189,614
Less: accumulated amortization		(1,515,069)	(1,113,067)
Intangible assets, net		\$ 14,163,077	\$ 14,076,547

Amortization of intangible assets for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, was \$360,632 and \$372,523, respectively. Annual amortization for the next five years from December 31, 2013, is expected to be \$347,793, \$325,875, \$314,193, \$311,123 and \$311,123, and \$12,552,970 thereafter.

8. CONSTRUCTION IN PROGRESS

The Companies had construction in progress of \$1.34 million at December 31, 2013, consisting of three ongoing projects.

1) SmartHeat Energy was building a factory for a total estimated cost of \$9.00 million, of which SmartHeat Energy paid \$0.47 million as of December 31, 2013. SmartHeat Energy halted construction of the factory resulting from returning the previously purchased land use right to the local authority where the factory was being built due to the adjustment of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority (see Note 12).

2) SmartHeat Siping has a construction project of \$36,000 for the laying of a foundation for its machinery installation. This foundation project will be completed in the third quarter of 2014.

3) Taiyu paid \$0.83 million for equipment and installation, this project was completed in July 2013 and is in the testing stage with continuous improvements. Taiyu expects to put into operation in the third quarter of 2014.

9. MAJOR CUSTOMERS AND VENDORS

One customer accounted for 12% of total sales for the year ended December 31, 2013. At December 31, 2013, total receivable from the customer was \$1,286,257.

For the year ended December 31, 2012, no customers accounted for more than 10% of the Companies' total sales.

For the years ended December 31, 2013, one vendor accounted for 11% of the Companies' total purchases. At December 31, 2013, total payable to the vendor was \$0.

For the year ended December 31, 2012, no vendors accounted for more than 10% of the Companies' total purchases.

10. TAXES RECEIVABLE

Taxes receivable consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012
Income	\$ 180,764	\$ -
Value-added	781,216	-
Other	6,144	-
Total	\$ 968,124	\$ -

11. TAXES PAYABLE

Taxes payable consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012
Income	\$ -	\$ 505,643
Value-added	99,456	62,425
Other	30,923	161,070
Total	\$ 130,379	\$ 729,138

12. ACCRUED LIABILITIES AND OTHER PAYABLES

Accrued liabilities and other payables consisted of the following at December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012
Advance from third parties	\$ 3,262,314	\$ -
Payable to Siping Beifang	2,306,184	1,947,808
Deposit from customer	2,988,240	-
Refund of land use right purchased	4,627,270	-
Others	539,728	512,935
Warranty reserve (See Note 2)	318,846	282,739
Accrued expenses	507,196	345,194
Advance from HP segment	16,388,299	14,947,602
Total	\$ 30,938,077	\$ 18,036,278

Advances from third parties were short-term, non-interest-bearing advances from third parties due on demand. Payable to Siping Beifang represented loans to them without interest and payable upon demand. Deposit from customer represented advance payment from a customer for SmartHeat Siping to execute the sales order; however, the customer wanted to cancel the order after SmartHeat Siping commenced manufacturing and the SmartHeat Siping refused to return the deposit claiming breach of the contract by the customer. The dispute was filed with the court and is currently docketed for trial.

Refund of land use right previously purchased represented the partial refund received for the land use right SmartHeat Energy purchased in November 2010. SmartHeat Energy later cancelled the purchase due to the adjustments of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority. The local government agreed to the cancellation and refunded SmartHeat Energy \$4.63 million as of December 31, 2013, and was committed to refund SmartHeat Energy the remaining purchase price. On May 21, 2014, SmartHeat Energy and Shenyang City Development and Land Resource Bureau Economy and Technology Development Office entered into an official agreement, whereby full purchase price of the land use right will be returned to SmartHeat Energy in installments within 5 days from the effective date of the official agreement. SmartHeat Energy will make the ownership change of the land use right within 3 days upon receiving the first installment of refund from the local authority effective on May 21, 2014. SmartHeat Energy received accumulated amount of \$14.89 million (RMB 91,622,000) as of June 30, 2014. Currently the land is used by the third party.

Advance from HP segment represented payables to other subsidiaries of SmartHeat Inc. Others represented payables for the Companies certain construction and installation projects, and miscellaneous expenses including postage, business insurance, employee benefits, project bidding fee, and medical insurance, etc. Accrued expenses mainly consisted of accrued payroll of \$0.31 million, accrued welfare, interest and utility.

13. NOTES PAYABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

Notes payable represented the conversion of accounts payable into notes payable, which were issued by a bank. The Companies deposited a portion of the acceptance amount into the bank as collateral. The terms of the notes range from 3-6 months and bear no interest. At December 31, 2013 and 2012, the Companies deposited \$1.30 million and \$0.37 million with the bank as restricted cash for the bank issuing the notes (See note 2). The restricted cash is refundable when the notes are repaid.

14. LOANS PAYABLE

Short-Term Bank Loans

The Companies were obligated for the following short-term loans as of December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012	Subsidiary obligated
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 50,000,000 entered into on February 17, 2012. The loan bore interest at 7.872% with maturity on January 16, 2013. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	7,954,817	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on July 12, 2012. The loan bore interest at 7.87% with maturity on July 11, 2013. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	1,590,963	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on August 23, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.30% with maturity on August 22, 2013. The loan was guaranteed by a third party. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	1,590,963	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,000,000 entered into on September 7, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.3% with maturity on September 6, 2013. The loan was guaranteed by a third party. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	1,431,867	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 8,000,000 entered into on September 13, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.3% with maturity on September 12, 2013. The loan was guaranteed by a third party. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	1,272,771	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 30,000,000 entered into on August 21, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.6% with maturity on August 20, 2013. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	4,772,890	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,600,000 entered into on September 13, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.6% with maturity on March 3, 2013. This loan was guaranteed by accounts receivable. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	1,527,325	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 13,000,000 entered into on December 12, 2011. The loan bore interest at 6.65% with maturity on October 26, 2013. This loan was pledged with Taiyu's building and land. This loan was repaid at maturity.	-	2,068,252	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 13,344,190 entered into on June 26, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.16% with maturity on January 18, 2014. The loan was repaid at maturity.	2,188,684	2,354,626	Taiyu
	1,640,178	1,590,963	Siping

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on November 30, 2012. The loan bore interest at 7.87% with maturity on November 22, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 40,000,000 entered into on March 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on March 10, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Siping, HeatPump and management of Chinese subsidiaries. This loan was repaid at maturity.

6,560,711 - Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on May 21, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on May 20, 2014. This loan was repaid at maturity.

1,640,178 - Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on August 29, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on August 29, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.

820,089 - Siping

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on September 4, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on September 4, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.

820,089 - Siping

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 30,000,000 entered into on August 8, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.90% with maturity on August 7, 2014.

4,920,533 - Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on September 18, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on September 17, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.

1,623,776 - Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on October 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on October 10, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.

1,623,776 - Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 16,000,000 entered into on July 10, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on January 9, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable. This loan was repaid at maturity.

2,624,285 - Taiyu

TOTAL \$ 24,462,299 \$ 26,155,437

The banks sometimes require loan guarantee provided by a third party to the Companies, the third party loan guarantor was Liaoning Wugang Metal Trading Co., Ltd. (“Liaoning Wugang”), with a maximum guarantee of RMB 46 million (\$7.32 million). The guarantee is for the loans entered from February 20, 2012 to August 16, 2013, with the guarantee length equal to the loan term; the guarantee service was extended for the loans entered or will be entered from September 18, 2013 to September 12, 2014 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the maximum guarantee amount was revised to RMB 44 million (\$7.05 million). The Companies were not required to pay any guarantee fees. However, the Companies have contracted to provide similar guarantees for up to RMB 20 million (\$3.18 million) to Liaoning Guorui Commercial Trading Co., Ltd. (“Guorui”). The guarantee is for the loans entered from January 12, 2012 to January 11, 2013 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the Companies do not require Guorui to pay any guarantee fees. The Companies did not extend the guarantee term for Guorui after January 11, 2013. These arrangements are common to the banking industry in China, and there are no other relationships between the Companies and Liaoning Wugang or Guorui, both of whom were referred to the Companies by the lending bank. As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, the Companies did not have any loan guarantees from Liaoning Wugang.

Long-Term Bank Loan

Taiyu entered into a long-term loan of \$2.13 million (RMB 13 million) with China Construction Bank on November 30, 2013 with maturity on November 29, 2015. The interest rate for the loan is variable currently at 6.46%, and to be paid on the 20th of each month. This loan is guaranteed by Taiyu’s building and land.

15. DEFERRED TAX ASSET (LIABILITY)

Deferred tax asset (liability) represented differences between the tax bases and book bases of bad debt allowance and provision of inventory impairment booked by the Companies, which was not allowed per tax purpose. As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, deferred tax asset (liability) consisted of the following:

	2013	2012
Deferred tax asset - current (bad debt allowance)	\$ 7,267,745	\$ 4,215,753
Deferred tax asset - current (inventory allowance)	1,864,883	598,623
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance for other receivable)	1,534,723	227,910
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance for advance to supplier)	375,512	333,851
Deferred tax asset – current (reserve for warranty)	33,282	-
Less: valuation allowance	(11,076,145)	(5,376,137)
Deferred tax assets, net	\$ -	\$ -

16. INCOME TAXES

Taiyu is governed by the Income Tax Law of the PRC concerning privately-run enterprises, which are generally subject to tax at 25% on income reported in the statutory financial statements after appropriate tax adjustments. Under the Income Tax Law that became effective January 1, 2008, new high-tech enterprises given special support by the PRC government are subject to an income tax rate of 15%. Taiyu has been classified as a high-tech enterprise since 2009 and eligible for an income tax rate of 15% through 2014. Local PRC government reviews the high-tech status of such enterprises annually.

SmartHeat Siping and SmartHeat Energy and Ruicheng are subject to the regular 25% PRC income tax rate.

The following table reconciles the statutory rates to the Companies' effective tax (benefit) rate for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012:

	2013	2012
PRC statutory tax (benefit) rates	(25.0)%	(25.0)%
Effect of tax holiday	6.4%	8.5%
Others	(0.1)%	(0.3)%
Valuation allowance	18.8%	19.9%
Tax expense per financial statements	0.1%	3.1%

17. STATUTORY RESERVES AND RESTRICTED NET ASSETS

Relevant PRC statutory laws and regulations permit payments of dividends by the Companies to foreign holding company only out of the subsidiary's retained earnings, if any, as determined in accordance with PRC accounting standards and regulations. The results of operations reflected in the financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP differ from those reflected in the statutory financial statements of the Companies.

In accordance with the PRC Regulations on Enterprises with Foreign Investment and their articles of association, a foreign-invested enterprise ("FIE") established in the PRC is required to provide certain statutory reserves, which are appropriated from net profit as reported in the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. An FIE is required to allocate at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit to the surplus reserve until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. Appropriations to other funds are at the discretion of the board of directors for all FIEs. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. Additionally, shareholders of an FIE are required to contribute capital to satisfy the registered capital requirement of the FIE. Until such contribution of capital is satisfied, the FIE is not allowed to repatriate profits to its shareholders, unless otherwise approved by the State Administration of Foreign Exchange. Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, and Ruicheng were established as FIEs and therefore are subject to the above-mandated restrictions on distributable profits.

Additionally, in accordance with the Company Law of the PRC, a domestic enterprise is required to provide surplus reserve at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. A domestic enterprise is also required to provide discretionary surplus reserve, at the discretion of the board of directors, from the profits determined in accordance with the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. SmartHeat Energy was established as domestic enterprises and therefore are subject to the above-mentioned restrictions on distributable profits.

As a result of these PRC laws and regulations that require annual appropriations of 10% of after-tax income to be set aside prior to payment of dividends as general reserve fund, the Companies are restricted in their ability to transfer a portion of their net assets to the foreign holding company as a dividend.

18. OTHER INCOME

The Companies had net other income, of \$470,730 and \$1,298,210 for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively. The net other income for the year ended December 31, 2013 mainly consisted of net profits from selling of raw material. The net other income for 2012 mainly consisted of net profits from selling of raw material of \$781,400; net profits from after-sales services of \$177,600, and a government subsidy of \$263,800.

19. COMMITMENTS

Lease Agreements

The Companies leased offices for its sales representative in several different cities under various one-year, non-cancellable and renewable operating lease agreements. Rental expense for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, was \$144,328 and \$186,574, respectively.

20. CONTINGENCIES

Certain of the Companies bank loans were guaranteed for repayment by a third party. The guarantee term is same as the loan term and the Companies are not required to pay for this guarantee service as the Companies provides the same guarantee service to loans of the third party. As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, the Companies signed a contract to provide guarantees of up to RMB 20 million (\$3.18 million) in loans for the third party (See Note 14 – Loans Payable).

The Companies' operations in the PRC are subject to specific considerations and significant risks not typically associated with companies in North America and Western Europe. These include risks associated with, among others, the political, economic and legal environments in China and foreign currency exchange. The Companies results may be adversely affected by changes in PRC government policies with respect to laws and regulations, anti-inflationary measures, currency conversion and remittance abroad and rates and methods of taxation, among other things.

The Companies' sales, purchases and expense transactions in China are denominated in RMB and all of the Companies' assets and liabilities in China are also denominated in RMB. The RMB is not freely convertible into foreign currencies under the current PRC law. In China, foreign exchange transactions are required by law to be transacted only by authorized financial institutions. Remittances in currencies other than RMB may require certain supporting documentation in order to affect the remittance.

PROPOSAL NUMBER 4
ADJOURNMENTS OF THE ANNUAL MEETING

At this year's Annual Meeting, stockholders will be asked to vote on a proposal to adjourn the Annual Meeting to another date, time or place, if deemed necessary in the judgment of the proxy holders, for the purpose of soliciting additional proxies to vote in favor of Proposal 3. Any adjournment of the Annual Meeting may be made without notice, other than by the announcement made at the Annual Meeting, if the majority of those shares present at the meeting, in person or represented by proxy, and entitled to vote thereon approve the adjournment proposal. However, if, after the adjournment, the Board of Directors fixes a new record date for the adjourned meeting, a new notice of the adjourned meeting shall be given to each stockholder of record on the new record date entitled to vote at the adjourned meeting. If we adjourn the Annual Meeting to a later date, we will transact the same business and, unless we must fix a new record date, only the stockholders who were eligible to vote at the original meeting will be permitted to vote at the adjourned meeting.

Required Vote

You may vote "FOR" or "AGAINST" the following resolution, or you may "ABSTAIN." Approval of this proposal requires the affirmative "FOR" vote of a majority of the shares present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote thereon. If you elect to "ABSTAIN," the abstention has the same effect as a vote "AGAINST." Unless marked to the contrary, proxies received will be voted "FOR" the approval of the adjournment of the annual meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3.

Recommendation

The Board of Directors recommends a vote "FOR" the approval of the approval of the adjournment of the annual meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposal 3.

As of the date of this Proxy Statement, there are no other matters that we intend to present, or have reason to believe others will present, at the Annual Meeting. If, however, other matters properly come before the Annual Meeting, the accompanying proxy authorizes the persons named as proxies or their substitutes to vote on such matters as they determine appropriate.

PROPOSAL NUMBER 5
APPROVAL OF AMENDMENTS TO CREDIT AND SECURITY AGREEMENT

On July 27, 2012, we entered into a secured, revolving credit facility under the terms of a Credit and Security Agreement (the “Credit Agreement”) with Northtech, which is owned by certain members of our former management, Jun Wang, Xudong Wang and Wen Sha. Huajun Ai, the Company’s Corporate Secretary is also a part owner of Northtech. On December 21, 2012, and July 27, 2013, the Company amended the Credit Agreement with Northtech.

The original Credit Agreement was filed as Exhibit 10.12 to the Company’s Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 1, 2012. The first amendment to the Credit Agreement was filed as Exhibit 10.13 to the Company’s Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 28, 2012 (the “First Amendment”). The second amendment to the Credit Agreement was filed as Exhibit 10.14 to the Company’s Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 26, 2013 (the “Second Amendment,” collectively, with the First Amendment, the “Amendments”).

In accordance with the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement, which requires us to submit the Amendments to our stockholders for approval at our next annual meeting, we are submitting the Amendment to our stockholders for their approval.

Background of the Credit and Security Agreement

We entered into the Credit Agreement to fulfill our need for short-term financing for our parent company to address its lack of adequate cash resources caused by deteriorating economic conditions in China which resulted in financial losses for our subsidiaries, which restricted our ability to transfer funds to our U.S. holding company.

Beginning in 2011 and continuing through 2013, the PRC government has pursued tightened fiscal policies in response to inflationary pressures. These policies have contributed to a general slowdown in many sectors of China’s economy including the industrial, residential and commercial markets which our subsidiaries serve. Many of our subsidiaries’ customers, the majority of whom are state-owned enterprises, have had difficulty in obtaining grants from the PRC government and have faced an extended bank loan application process, both of which are typically used to finance the purchase of our subsidiaries’ products. Accordingly, these policies have affected the sales of our subsidiaries’ products as customers have deferred bidding for new projects or abandoned existing projects. The result has been a marked decline in our subsidiaries’ revenues and profitability since 2011.

As we are a holding company with no material assets other than the ownership interests of our operating subsidiaries, we rely on dividends paid by our subsidiaries for our cash needs to pay our operating expenses. However, our subsidiaries in the PRC must comply with complex currency and capital transfer regulations to transfer capital outside of the PRC and restrictions imposed by their own respective Credit Agreement. PRC regulations currently permit payment of dividends only out of accumulated profits as determined in accordance with accounting standards and regulations in China. Based on PRC accounting standards, our PRC subsidiaries are also required to set aside at least 10% of net income after taxes each year to statutory surplus reserves until the cumulative amount of such reserves reaches 50% of registered capital. These reserves are not distributable as cash dividends.

As the profitability of our subsidiaries decreased, they were unable to pay dividends to us, and our cash balances decreased significantly, causing us to seek short-term financing.

Board of Directors Actions

Our Board of Directors, recognizing our cash flow, liquidity and cash resource issues, decided to restructure our management team and our Board of Directors and retained Nimbus Restructuring Manager LLC (“Nimbus”) to act as restructuring advisor. Our management team, Jun Wang, Xudong Wang and Wen Sha, resigned from their respective positions with the Company in order to focus their time and attention exclusively on the operations of our subsidiaries, and the Board of Directors elected Oliver Bialowons, an executive with significant restructuring experience, as a director and appointed him as President of the Company.

With the assistance of Nimbus, our Board of Directors also began to seek short term financing to immediately address our cash flow situation, until a more permanent solution could be developed, studied and approved. We were informally approached by investment bankers, lawyers, M&A brokers and restructuring and other consultants proposing one form or another of advice or assistance. None of these approaches yielded a specific financing proposal.

Jun Wang, the Company's former Chief Executive Officer, discussed the possibility with Nimbus that Mr. Wang lend us money on a short-term basis, and Nimbus formulated an initial proposal for a secured, revolving line of credit. After our Board of Directors discussed the proposal, and requested certain modifications to the initial proposal, the Board of Directors authorized, at its May 24-25 meeting, the negotiation of definitive agreements based on the modified initial proposal. On July 27, 2012, we entered into the Credit Agreement with Northtech.

Rationale for the Credit and Security Agreement

Our Board of Directors considered the Credit Agreement to be best and only available practical option at the time we needed immediate short term financing. Specifically, the Board discussed the fact that we lacked time and cash resources to support a search for credit or capital, and that any third party would have to conduct a lengthy due diligence process at the Company's expense which may or may not result in funding. Northtech, whose principals are comprised of members of our former management team, including our former Chief Executive Officer, were already intimately familiar with the Company and its subsidiaries, and did not require a lengthy due diligence process prior to providing us with short term financing.

Further, the Board found the terms of the Credit Agreement to be favorable as compared to terms that are typically offered in holding company financing. The Agreement permits us to prepay the loan in the case more favorable terms are found, gives us the option to extend the maturity date of amounts drawn for up to an additional 36 months and provides us with the option to repay amounts drawn in either cash or restricted shares of our Common Stock. The Company also obtained a fairness opinion from an independent third party which concluded that the prices and terms of the Credit Agreement were fair to the Company.

Terms of Credit and Security Agreement

The following description of the Credit Agreement, as amended, does not purport to be complete and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the Credit Agreement and the First and Second Amendment.

Borrowings under the Credit Agreement are secured by our deposit accounts and general intangibles located in the United States, our trademarks in the PRC and 55% of our equity interests in each of our wholly- and directly-owned subsidiaries (the "Collateral").

An origination fee of 4% of the Committed Amount was due to Northtech upon the signing of the Credit Agreement, and has been paid. Borrowings bear interest at a rate of 10% annually, payable quarterly, and amounts borrowed under the Credit Agreement initially matured on April 30, 2014 which was subsequently extended to January 31, 2015 by amendment. At our option, the maturity date of amounts borrowed under the Credit Agreement may be extended for up to four (4) successive nine-month periods in exchange for an extension fee of 4% of the Committed Amount for each extension. Generally, borrowings may be prepaid at any time without premium or penalty, provided however that if we prepay any amount due under the Credit Agreement from the proceeds of another instrument or agreement of indebtedness, we are required to pay a 10% prepayment fee.

All amounts due under the Credit Agreement may, at our option, be paid in either cash or restricted shares of our Common Stock. The number of restricted shares that may be issued would be determined by dividing the total amount payable by the average share price of our Common Stock at time the shares are issued. Under the terms of the Credit Agreement, average share price is defined as the average of the opening and closing prices of our Common Stock on a trading day, or the average of the bid and ask prices if our shares are not traded on such trading day, provided that in no event shall the average share price used for such calculation be lower than \$0.40 or higher than \$2.80 (the "Average Share Price").

All amounts due under the Credit Agreement may, at our option, be paid in either cash or restricted shares of our common stock. The number of restricted shares that may be issued would be determined by dividing the total amount payable by the average share price of our common stock at time the shares are issued. Under the terms of the Credit Agreement, average share price is defined as the average of the opening and closing prices of our common stock on a trading day, or the average of the bid and ask prices if our shares are not traded on such trading day, provided that in no event shall the average share price used for such calculation be lower than \$0.40 or higher than \$2.80 (the "Average Share Price").

In the event any shares are issued for the payment of obligations under the Credit Agreement, Northtech shall pay to us an amount equal to the number of share issued multiplied by the par value of such shares. All shares issued to Northech under the Credit Agreement shall be restricted from sale unless such sales occur under an effective registration statement or in a privately negotiated transaction that is exempt from registration, where the transferee agrees to the transfer restrictions. Further, we have the option to repurchase all shares issued to Northtech at a price equal to 150% of the Average Share Price on the date of issuance. The transfer restrictions and our repurchase option terminate on June 30, 2017, or in the event of a change in control of the Company.

The Credit Agreement contains representations and warranties by us relating to, among other things, our organization, the due authorization of the Credit Agreement and the shares that may be issued thereunder, the enforceability of the Credit Agreement, our title to the Collateral, and the accuracy of our filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

The Agreement also contains representations and warranties by Northtech relating to, among other things, its organization and the due authorization and enforceability of the Credit Agreement.

As long as amounts due under the Credit Agreement remain outstanding we have agreed to provide Northtech with our annual budget, to use any amounts drawn under the Credit Agreement solely for working capital purposes and to submit the Credit Agreement to our stockholders for approval. We have also agreed to, subject to the fiduciary duties of our Board of Directors, to conduct our business in the ordinary course consistent with past practices, maintain our current legal structure, and to refrain from selling or transferring our significant assets.

Borrowings made under the Credit Agreement are subject to certain conditions customary to such transactions, including, with the exception of initial borrowing, evidence to the satisfaction of Northtech that its security interest in the Collateral has been perfected.

In event of a default, including, among other things customary to such a transaction, our failure to pay any amounts when due, default in the performance of, or breach of any covenant in the Credit Agreement, a change in control, insolvency, an incorrect representation or warranty, any event or circumstance that Northtech believes in good faith will impair our ability to repay amounts due under the Credit Agreement, or if our stockholders do not approve the Credit Agreement submitted for their approval in this proxy statement, Northtech may declare all amounts due to be forthwith due and payable and may exercise its rights over the Collateral as a secured party. Specifically, Northtech may take possession of the Collateral without judicial process and shall have the right to sell, lease or otherwise dispose of the Collateral.

First Amendment to the Credit and Security Agreement

On December 21, 2012, we entered into the First Amendment to the Credit Agreement. The Amendment modified the definition of "Average Share Price" in the Credit Agreement to decrease the minimum and maximum values for the "Average Share Price," from \$1.00 to \$0.50 and from \$7.00 to \$3.50, respectively. The Amendment also increased the maximum line which may be borrowed under the Credit Agreement from \$2,000,000 to \$2,500,000, extended the maturity date for amounts borrowed from April 30, 2013 to April 30, 2014, and permitted the Company to use amounts borrowed to repurchase shares of its Common Stock. Further, the Company increased its pledge of 35% of its equity interest in each of its wholly-, directly-owned subsidiaries as collateral for amounts borrowed to 55%.

Also under the terms of the First Amendment, and in accordance with Section 2.6 of the Credit Agreement, which permitted the Company to repay any of its obligations under the Credit Agreement in restricted shares of its Common Stock, the Company issued Northtech 1,300,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock as repayment of \$1,300,000 of the \$1,384,455 outstanding as of December 21, 2012, under the Credit Agreement.

Second Amendment to the Credit Agreement

On August 23, 2013, we entered into the Second Amendment to the Credit Agreement. The Second Amendment decreased the interest rate payable on borrowings under the Credit Agreement effective January 1, 2013, to 10% annually, compounded and payable quarterly, from 1.25% per month, payable monthly. We agreed to pay an amendment fee of 100,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock to Northtech. Concurrently with the Second Amendment, the Company secured Northtech's consent to permit the Company to incur subordinated debt and to restructure the organization of its subsidiaries.

Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement

On July 14, 2014 we entered into the Third Amendment to the Credit Agreement. The Third Amendment modified the definition of "Average Share Price" in the Credit Agreement to decrease the minimum and maximum values for the "Average Share Price," by 20% each from \$0.50 to \$0.40 and from \$3.50 to \$2.80, respectively. The Amendment also increased the maximum line which may be borrowed under the Credit Agreement from \$2,500,000 to \$3,250,000, and

extended the maturity date for amounts borrowed from April 30, 2014 to January 31, 2015. We agreed to pay an amendment fee of 200,000 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock to Northtech valued at \$0.50 per share.

The Board believes that the Third Amendment, by extending the maturity date of amounts borrowed and increasing the maximum line which can be borrowed under the Credit Agreement, is in the best interests of the Company and provided the Company with increased flexibility and additional time to search to repay amounts due under the Credit Agreement and to provide additional liquidity we require.

Required Vote

You may vote “FOR” or “AGAINST” the following resolution, or you may “ABSTAIN.” Approval of this proposal requires the affirmative “FOR” vote of a majority of the shares present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote thereon. If you elect to “ABSTAIN,” the abstention has the same effect as a vote “AGAINST.” Unless marked to the contrary, proxies received will be voted “FOR” ratification of the Credit Agreement Amendments.

Under the terms of the Amendment to the Credit Agreement we are required to submit the Amendment to our stockholders for approval. If the Amendment to Credit Agreement is not approved it shall constitute an event of default under the Amendments to the Credit Agreement and all amounts currently outstanding under the Credit Agreement shall become immediately due and payable. In this event, the Board of Directors will seek to repay as much of the outstanding debt as possible and attempt to renegotiate the Amendments to Credit Agreement on new terms.

If the Amendment is not approved, all amounts drawn under the Credit Agreement shall become immediately due and payable.

Recommendation

The Board of Directors recommends a vote “FOR” the approval of the Amendments to the Credit Agreement.

EQUITY INTEREST PURCHASE AGREEMENT

Party A: Heat PHE, Inc., a corporation organized under the laws of the state of Nevada with principal offices at 1802 North Carson Street, Suite 212, Carson City NV 89701.

Party B: Hongjun Zhang, on behalf of all Buyers identified in the Buyers' Response to RFP submitted to SmartHeat on September 10, 2013 (the "Buyers").

This Equity Interest Purchase Agreement is executed on October 10, 2013 by and among the above parties (the "Agreement"). In this Agreement, each of Party A and Party B shall be referred to as a "Party," and collectively, the "Parties."

WHEREAS,

- (1) Party A is a corporation duly organized and validly existing under the laws of the state of Nevada and owns 100% of the equity interests of the following subsidiaries:
 - a. SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy, incorporated in the People's Republic of China ("Taiyu");
 - b. SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd., incorporated in the People's Republic of China ("Siping");
 - c. SmartHeat (Shenyang Energy Equipment) Co. Ltd., incorporated in the People's Republic of China ("Shenyang"); and
- (2) Party A owns 51% of the equity interests of Hohot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd. ("Ruicheng"); and
- (3) Party A owns 46% of the equity interests of Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company, incorporated in the People's Republic of China ("XinRui").
- (4) Taiyu, Siping, Shenyang, Ruicheng and XinRui are collectively referred to as the "Target Companies"
- (5) Party B is a group of individual citizens of the People's Republic of China.
- (6) SmartHeat, Inc. is a corporation organized under the laws of the state of Nevada, with an address at 1802 North Carson Street, Suite 212, Carson City NV 89701 ("SmartHeat"), and owns 100% of the stock of Heat PHE Inc., subject to liens incurred by SmartHeat pursuant to the Credit and Security Agreement between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc., dated July 27, 2012, as amended;
- (7) Northtech Holdings, Inc., has delivered a written consent permitting Party A to enter into this Agreement, waiving the lien Northtech Holdings Inc. owns on the Target Companies and permitting the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby; and

- (8) Party A desires to sell, and Party B desires to purchase, such percentages of Party A's equity interests in the Target Companies on the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the representations, warranties, and agreements contained in this Agreement, the Parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Equity Interest Purchase and Consideration

1.1. Party B hereby agrees to purchase, and Party A hereby agrees to sell and transfer to Party B, 40% of its legally owned equity interest in each (but not fewer than all) of the Target Companies to Party B prior to December 31, 2013 (the "Initial Closing Date") for RMB 5,000,000, subject to the termination provisions set forth in paragraph 6 below.

1.2. Party B hereby agrees that Party A shall have an option, but not an obligation, in the event of the sale in paragraph 1.1 hereof, to repurchase the equity interests in the Target Companies held by Party B for RMB 5,600,000, within 60 days of the Initial Closing Date, or February 28, 2014, whichever is later (the "Initial Option Expiration Date").

1.3. In the event Party A chooses not to exercise the option granted to it in Paragraph 1.2 hereof, Party B shall then have the option to purchase an additional 40% of Party B's legally owned equity interests in each (but not fewer than all) of the Target Companies (the "Second 40% Interest") for RMB 6,000,000 within 30 days of the Initial Option Expiration Date or March 31, 2014, whichever is later (the "Second Option Expiration Date").

1.3.1 In the event Party B exercises its option to purchase an additional 40% of Party A's legally owned equity interests in each (but not fewer than all) of the Target Companies in accordance with paragraph 1.3 hereof; the Parties hereby agree that such sale and purchase shall be submitted to the stockholders of SmartHeat for their approval at the earliest possible date prior to the sale being consummated, and shall be conditioned upon approval by a majority of SmartHeat's stockholders present and voting and receipt by the Board of the Fairness Opinion.

1.4. In the event Party B exercises the option granted to it in Paragraph 1.3 hereof, Party A has an option, but not the obligation, to require Party B to purchase the remaining 20% of Party A's legally owned equity interests in each (but not fewer than all) of the Target Companies for RMB 2,500,000 either at or within 120 days of the Second Option Expiration Date. Should Party A exercise the option granted to it under this Paragraph 1.4, the Parties intend for Party B to be legally bound to purchase the remaining 20% of Party A's legally owned interest in the Target Companies.

2. Change of Registration

2.1. The Parties hereby agree that Party A shall direct the Target Companies to file the applicable registration change in the State Administration for Industry and Commerce in the People's Republic of China as equity interests in the Target Companies are sold and transferred by Party A and purchased and assumed by Party B to carry out the intent of this Agreement.

2.2. The cost related to the registration change with the People's Republic of China shall be undertaken by the Target Companies. The taxes incurred from the transfer of the equity interests shall be under by each tax obligor, respectively.

3. Representations and Warranties

3.1. Party A represents and warrants to the following:

3.1.1 Party A is selling the equity interests in the Target Companies "as is" and makes no other representations, warranties or covenants, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

3.1.2 Party A has good and marketable title to the equity interests of the Target Companies owned by Party A, free and clear of all encumbrances, subject to liens incurred by SmartHeat pursuant to the Credit and Security Agreement between the Company and Northtech Holdings, Inc., dated July 27, 2012, as amended, and subject to any transfer requirements in the People's Republic of China.

3.1.3 Party A is duly organized and validly existing under the laws of the State of Nevada, and the Target Companies are registered under the proper governmental authorities as required under the laws of the People's Republic of China.

3.1.4 Party A has the full right, power and authority to enter into this Agreement and to perform all of its obligations hereunder.

3.1.5 The execution and performance of this Agreement shall not breach any other signed material contract or Agreement to which Party A is a party.

3.1.6 The representative who has executed this Agreement on behalf of Party A has been duly authorized to execute this Agreement.

3.2. Party B represents and warrants to the following:

3.2.1 Party B is a group of individual citizens of the People's Republic of China.

3.2.2 Party B has the full right, power and authority to enter into this Agreement and to perform all of its obligations hereunder.

3.2.3 The execution of this Agreement shall not breach any other signed material contract or Agreement to which Party B is a party.

3.2.4 The representative of Party B who has executed this Agreement has been duly authorized to execute this Agreement.

3.2.5 Party B has been given full opportunity to review all documents requested by Party B to evaluate this transaction and acknowledges that it has been given sufficient information to make its investment decision in the Target Companies. Party B acknowledges that the sale of the Target Companies is "as is."

4. Closing

4.1 The Closings hereunder (each a "Closing") shall take place electronically, or at such other place or by such other means as agreed by the Parties. At each Closing, Party A shall deliver to Party B evidence of the transfer of the specified equity interest in the Target Companies and Party B shall deliver to Party A's China subsidiary, SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co. Ltd., the consideration by wire transfer of immediately available funds.

4.2 In the event Party B exercises its option to repurchase the 40% equity interest in the Target Companies in accordance with paragraph 1.2 hereof, the Closing for such repurchase shall take place electronically, or at such other place or by such other means as agreed by the Parties. At the Closing in accordance with this paragraph 4.2, Party B shall deliver to Party A evidence of the transfer of the 40% equity interest in the Target Companies back to Party A and Party A shall deliver to Party B the consideration therefor by wire transfer of immediately available funds.

5. Notices and Delivery

5.1 The Parties acknowledge, any notice and other correspondence concerning this Agreement ("Notice") shall be made in writing and shall be (a) personally delivered, or (b) sent by overnight courier and transmitted electronically, in each case addressed or emailed to the Party to whom notice is being given at its address set forth in the Preamble to this Agreement, or as to each Party, at such other address or e-mail as may hereafter be designated by such Party in a written notice to the other Party complying as to the delivery with the terms of this paragraph 5.1. All such notices, requests, demands and other communications shall be deemed to have been given on (a) the date received if personally delivered, or (b) the date sent if sent by overnight courier and e-mail.

6. Amendment, Termination and Transfer of this Agreement

6.1 Any amendment or modification to this Agreement is required to be approved and negotiated by all Parties and shall only be effective by way of a written agreement executed by the Parties.

6.2 This Agreement may be terminated:

6.2.1 At any time prior to the Initial Closing Date, by mutual agreement between Party A and Party B;

6.2.2 Unilaterally by Party A at any time by payment to Party B of RMB 600,000 (the “Break-Up Fee”).

6.2.3 Unilaterally by Party B in the event the stockholders of SmartHeat fail to approve the purchase of an additional 40% of Party A’s legally owned equity interests in the Target Companies in accordance with paragraph 1.3.1.

6.2.4 By a non-breaching Party, in the event a Party breaches this Agreement, and such breach shall not be corrected within thirty days of written notice of the breach sent by the non-breaching Party.

6.2.5 If the transactions contemplated by this Agreement cannot be consummated as consequence of a force majeure event.

6.3 Any Party seeking to terminate this Agreement shall provide written notice of the termination to the other Party, which termination shall become effective upon receipt of the other Party of the written notice.

6.4 The Break-Up Fee provided for in Section 6.2.2 of this Agreement shall be the sole and exclusive remedy for Party B in the event of a termination in accordance with 6.2.2.

6.5 The Parties agree not to transfer any or all of their obligations under this Agreement without the written agreement of the non-transferring Party.

7. Dispute Resolution

7.1 This Agreement shall be governed by and construed under the internal laws of the People’s Republic of China.

7.2 This Agreement shall be governed by procedures other than litigation for settling all claims and disputes under the method set forth below:

7.2.1 The Parties agree to attempt in good faith to settle any dispute arising under or relating to this Agreement by mediation before the Hong Kong International Arbitration Centre (HKIAC) under the then-current version of HKIAC’s Commercial Mediation Rules. The place of mediation shall be in Hong Kong and three mediators shall be appointed, one by Party A, one by Party B, and one who shall be selected by the Parties mutual agreement.

7.2.2 If the mediation is abandoned by the mediator or is otherwise concluded without the dispute being resolved, the parties may, at their option refer the dispute to arbitration at HKIAC in accordance with its then-current International Arbitration Rules.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1 Taxes and expenses incurred by the transactions contemplated by this Agreement shall be borne by the Parties in accordance with their respective obligations, unless otherwise provided. The tax related to the change of registration shall be borne by the Target Companies.

8.2 This Agreement shall not be modified or altered except in a writing executed by both of the Parties. For matters outside of this Agreement, the Parties shall sign a supplemental agreement. The supplemental agreement, together with this Agreement, shall constitute the entire Agreement and have the same legal effect.

8.3 This Agreement shall be effective immediately upon the execution by the Parties. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be deemed to be an original and all of which counterparts, taken together, shall constitute one and the same instrument.

8.4 Any provision of this Agreement which is prohibited or unenforceable shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining provisions hereof.

8.5 Section headings in this Agreement are included for convenience of reference only and shall not constitute a part of this Agreement for any other purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be executed by their respective officers thereunto duly authorized as of the date first above written.

PARTY A:

HEAT PHE INC.

/s/ Oliver Bialowons

Name: Oliver Bialowons

Title: President

PARTY B:

/s/ Hongjun Zhang

Name: Hongjun Zhang, on behalf of all Buyers

7

Annex B

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-Q

QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE
SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the quarterly period ended March 31, 2014

OR

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE
SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

Commission file number: 001-34246

SMARTHEAT INC.
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation
or organization)

98-0514768
(IRS Employer Identification No.)

A-1, 10, Street 7
Shenyang Economic and Technological
Development Zone

Shenyang, China
(Address of principal executive offices)

110141
(Zip Code)

+86 (24) 2519-7699
(Registrant's telephone number, including area
code)

Indicate by checkmark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the last 90 days.

YES NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of

this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files).

YES NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "non-accelerated filer," and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

(do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

YES NO

As of June 17, 2014, there were 6,583,399 shares of common stock outstanding.

Table of Contents

SmartHeat Inc.

Table of Contents

	Page
<u>Note about Forward-Looking Statements</u>	1
PART I. FINANCIAL INFORMATION	
Item 1. <u>Financial Statements</u>	3
Item 2. <u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	25
Item 3. <u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk</u>	36
Item 4. <u>Controls and Procedures</u>	37
PART II. OTHER INFORMATION	
Item 1. <u>Legal Proceedings</u>	38
Item 1A. <u>Risk Factors</u>	38
Item 2. <u>Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds</u>	38
Item 3. <u>Defaults Upon Senior Securities</u>	38
Item 4. <u>Mine Safety Disclosures</u>	38
Item 5. <u>Other Information</u>	38
Item 6. <u>Exhibits</u>	38
<u>Signatures</u>	39
<u>Exhibit Index</u>	40

Table of Contents

NOTE ABOUT FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS AND OTHER INFORMATION

This report contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, which include, but are not limited to, statements concerning our projected revenues, expenses, gross profit and income, mix of revenue, demand for our products, the benefits and potential applications for our products, the need for additional capital, our ability to obtain and successfully perform additional new contract awards and the related funding and profitability of such awards, the competitive nature of our business and markets and product qualification requirements of our customers. These forward-looking statements are based on our current expectations, estimates and projections about our industry, management's beliefs and certain assumptions made by us. Words such as "anticipates," "expects," "intends," "plans," "predicts," "potential," "believes," "seeks," "hopes," "estimates," "should," "may," "will," "with" variations of these words or similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements. These statements are not guarantees of future performance and are subject to risks, uncertainties and assumptions that are difficult to predict. Therefore, our actual results could differ materially and adversely from those expressed in any forward-looking statements as a result of various factors. Such factors include, but are not limited to the following:

- our goals and strategies;
 - our expansion plans;
- our future business development, financial conditions and results of operations;
- the expected growth of the market for PHE products, heat meters and heat pumps in our target markets;
 - our expectations regarding demand for our products;
- our expectations regarding keeping and strengthening our relationships with key customers;
 - our ability to stay abreast of market trends and technological advances;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property rights effectively and not infringe on the intellectual property rights of others;
 - our ability to attract and retain quality employees;
 - our ability to pursue strategic acquisitions and alliances;
 - competition in our industry in China;
- general economic and business conditions in the regions in which we sell our products;
 - relevant government policies and regulations relating to our industry; and
 - market acceptance of our products.

Additionally, this report contains statistical data that we obtained from various publicly available government publications and industry-specific third party reports. Statistical data in these publications also include projections based on a number of assumptions. The markets for PHEs, PHE Units, heat meters and heat pumps may not grow at the rates projected by market data, or at all. The failure of these markets to grow at the projected rates may have a material adverse effect on our business and the market price of our common stock. In addition, the changing nature of our customers' industries results in uncertainties in any projections or estimates relating to the growth prospects or future condition of our markets. Furthermore, if any one or more of the assumptions underlying the market data is later found to be incorrect, actual results may differ from the projections based on these assumptions.

Unless otherwise indicated, information in this report concerning economic conditions and our industry is based on information from independent industry analysts and publications, as well as our estimates. Except where otherwise noted, our estimates are derived from publicly available information released by third party sources, as well as data from our internal research, and are based on such data and our knowledge of our industry, which we believe to be reasonable. None of the market data from independent industry publications cited in this report was prepared on our or our affiliates' behalf.

Additional information on the various risks and uncertainties potentially affecting our operating results are discussed in this report and other documents we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, or available upon written request to our corporate secretary at: A-1, 10, Street 7, Shenyang Economic and Technological Development Zone, Shenyang, China 110141. We undertake no obligation to revise or update publicly any forward-looking statements for any reason, except as required by law. Given these risks and uncertainties, readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements.

Table of Contents

As used in this report, “SmartHeat,” “Company,” “we,” “our” and similar terms refer to SmartHeat Inc. and its subsidiaries, unless the context indicates otherwise.

Our functional currency is the U.S. Dollar, or USD, while the functional currency of our subsidiaries in China are denominated in Chinese Yuan Renminbi, or RMB, the national currency of the People’s Republic of China, which we refer to as the PRC or China, and the functional currency of our subsidiary in Germany is denominated in Euros, or EUR. The functional currencies of our foreign operations are translated into USD for balance sheet accounts using the current exchange rates in effect as of the balance sheet date and for revenue and expense accounts using the average exchange rate during the fiscal year. See Note 2 of the consolidated financial statements included herein.

Effective February 7, 2012, we implemented a one-for-ten reverse stock split of our common stock. Unless otherwise indicated, all share amounts and per share prices in this report were retroactively adjusted to reflect the effect of this reverse stock split. See Note 1 of the consolidated financial statements included herein.

Table of Contents

PART I. FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Item 1. Financial Statements

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

	March 31, 2014 (UNAUDITED)	December 31, 2013
ASSETS		
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash & equivalents	\$ 8,411,143	\$ 13,602,399
Restricted cash	1,455,554	2,458,758
Accounts receivable, net	2,054,887	12,167,565
Retentions receivable, net	4,023,150	4,202,109
Advances to suppliers, net	3,718,489	6,584,833
Other receivables (net), prepayments and deposits	2,132,253	2,644,522
Inventories, net	56,949,501	56,324,363
Taxes receivable	767,231	989,635
Notes receivable - bank acceptances	2,000,770	2,759,251
Total current assets	81,512,978	101,733,434
NONCURRENT ASSETS		
Long term investment	931,216	934,805
Restricted cash	249,744	135,926
Retentions receivable	-	237,882
Advance for equipment purchase	1,242,074	-
Construction in progress	1,326,234	1,340,905
Property and equipment, net	9,761,183	10,185,160
Intangible assets, net	14,590,363	14,885,623
Total noncurrent assets	28,100,814	27,720,301
TOTAL ASSETS	\$ 109,613,792	\$ 129,453,735
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable	\$ 6,778,423	\$ 6,683,860
Advance from customers	2,093,647	2,630,061
Taxes payable	16,965	197,078
Accrued liabilities and other payables	17,415,851	17,215,006
Notes payable - bank acceptances	1,550,872	2,590,025
Loans payable	20,110,039	24,462,299
Total current liabilities	47,965,797	53,778,329

CREDIT LINE PAYABLE	1,749,335	1,396,378
LONG-TERM LOAN	2,113,100	2,132,231
DEFERRED TAX LIABILITY	2,951	17,177
COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES		
STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Common stock, \$0.001 par value; 75,000,000 shares authorized, 6,133,399 shares issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013	6,133	6,133
Paid-in capital	81,901,266	81,901,266
Shares to be issued	37,500	-
Statutory reserve	5,389,057	5,389,057
Accumulated other comprehensive income	8,428,963	8,991,269
Accumulated deficit	(61,067,784)	(51,991,839)
Total Company stockholders' equity	34,695,135	44,295,886
NONCONTROLLING INTEREST	23,087,474	27,833,734
TOTAL EQUITY	57,782,609	72,129,620
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	\$ 109,613,792	\$ 129,453,735

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(UNAUDITED)

	THREE MONTHS ENDED MARCH 31,	
	2014	2013
	(UNAUDITED)	
Net sales	\$4,959,966	\$6,168,431
Cost of goods sold	5,363,957	8,945,191
Gross loss	(403,991)	(2,776,760)
Operating expenses		
Selling	1,566,511	1,695,942
General and administrative	2,914,327	2,336,643
Provision for bad debts	8,749,275	4,763,074
Provision for advance to supplier	74,790	1,240,679
Total operating expenses	13,304,903	10,036,338
Loss from operations	(13,708,894)	(12,813,098)
Non-operating income (expenses)		
Investment (loss) income	(3,609)	561
Interest income	27,683	15,390
Interest expense	(369,142)	(343,811)
Financial expense	(52,136)	(62,899)
Foreign exchange transaction gain	3,399	2,499
Other income, net	241,751	310,298
Total non-operating expenses, net	(152,054)	(77,962)
Loss before income tax	(13,860,948)	(12,891,060)
Income tax benefit	(14,536)	(22,444)
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(13,846,412)	(12,868,616)
Less: Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(4,770,467)	(44,742)
Net loss to SmartHeat Inc.	(9,075,945)	(12,823,874)
Other comprehensive item		
Foreign currency translation gain (loss) attributable to SmartHeat Inc.	(562,306)	188,517
Foreign currency translation gain attributable to noncontrolling interest	24,207	2,732

Edgar Filing: SMARTHEAT INC. - Form PRER14A

Comprehensive loss attributable to SmartHeat Inc.	\$ (9,638,251)	\$ (12,635,357)
Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	\$ (4,746,260)	\$ (42,010)
Basic and diluted weighted average shares outstanding	6,147,288	5,733,399
Basic and diluted loss per share	\$ (1.48)	\$ (2.24)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(UNAUDITED)

	THREE MONTHS ENDED	
	MARCH 31,	
	2014	2013
	(UNAUDITED)	
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:		
Loss including noncontrolling interest	\$(13,846,412)	\$(12,868,616)
Adjustments to reconcile loss including noncontrolling interest to net cash used in operating activities:		
Investment (income) loss	3,609	(561)
Depreciation and amortization	557,678	523,793
Provision for bad debts	8,749,275	4,763,074
Provision for inventory impairment	1,042,792	4,930,764
Provision for advance to suppliers	74,790	1,240,679
Changes in warranty reserves	(3,482)	10,627
Stock based compensation for shares to be issued to officers and director	37,500	-
Changes in deferred tax	(14,150)	(22,689)
(Increase) decrease in assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	2,503,638	6,921,548
Retentions receivable	379,104	(477,454)
Advances to suppliers	3,795,413	941,871
Other receivables, prepayments and deposits	(1,788,106)	(243,164)
Inventories	(2,173,250)	(7,127,116)
Taxes receivable	36,344	(2,031,312)
Accounts payable	(867,395)	684,949
Advance from customers	(3,493,608)	877,244
Accrued liabilities and other payables	3,253,161	35,237
Net cash used in operating activities	(1,753,099)	(1,841,126)
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		
Change in restricted cash	870,932	(247,156)
Acquisition of property & equipment	(10,260)	(257,492)
Notes receivable	737,813	266,004
Advance for equipment purchase	(1,248,997)	-
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	349,488	(238,644)
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:		
Proceeds from short-term loans	7,178,649	22,821,303
Repayment on short-term loans	(11,334,454)	(24,281,277)
Credit line payable	450,000	300,000
Net cash used in financing activities	(3,705,805)	(1,159,974)

EFFECT OF EXCHANGE RATE CHANGE ON CASH & EQUIVALENTS	(81,840)	(32,444)
NET DECREASE IN CASH & EQUIVALENTS	(5,191,256)	(3,272,188)
CASH & EQUIVALENTS, BEGINNING OF PERIOD	13,602,399	18,336,163
CASH & EQUIVALENTS, END OF PERIOD	\$8,411,143	\$15,063,975
Supplemental cash flow data:		
Income tax paid	\$12,772	\$589,065
Interest paid	\$430,154	\$340,139

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

SMARTHEAT INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
MARCH 31, 2014 (UNAUDITED) AND DECEMBER 31, 2013

1. ORGANIZATION AND DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS

SmartHeat Inc., formerly known as Pacific Goldrim Resources, Inc. (the “Company” or “SmartHeat”), was incorporated on August 4, 2006, in the State of Nevada. The Company, through its operating subsidiaries in China and Germany, designs, manufactures, sells and services plate heat exchangers (“PHEs”), PHE Units, which combine PHEs with various pumps, temperature sensors, valves and automated control systems, heat meters and heat pumps for use in commercial and residential buildings.

On August 23 2013, the Company formed two new wholly-owned subsidiaries in the State of Nevada, Heat HP Inc., and HEAT PHE Inc. On August 23, 2013, SmartHeat Inc., the Company’s United States parent company entered into Assignment Agreements with Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc., respectively. Under the Assignment Agreements, the Company agreed to transfer 100% of its right, title and interest in certain subsidiaries to Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc. The reorganization was performed so the Company’s subsidiaries would be organized along their respective operating segments with Heat HP holding those subsidiaries that operated in the heat pumps and related products segment and Heat PHE holding those subsidiaries that operated in the plate heating equipment, meters and related products segment.

After the assignment, Heat HP Inc. owned 100% of SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Investment”), SmartHeat (Shanghai) Trading Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Trading”), Beijing SmartHeat Jinhui Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“Jinhui”), SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH (“SmartHeat Germany”), and 98.8% of SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Pump”).

After the assignment, Heat PHE Inc. owned 100% of SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“Taiyu”), SanDeKe Co., Ltd., (“SanDeKe”), SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Siping”), SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd. (“SmartHeat Energy”), and 51% of Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd. (“Ruicheng”).

On August 23, 2013, the Company entered into a Stock Pledge Agreement with Northtech Holdings Inc. (“Northtech”). The Company agreed to deliver shares certificates to Northtech representing 55% of Heat HP Inc. and Heat PHE Inc. to perfect the security interest in each of the Company’s directly and wholly-owned subsidiaries granted to Northtech as collateral security for all of the obligations of the Company owed to Northtech.

In December 2013, SmartHeat US parent incorporated SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co. (“Heat Exchange”) in China with register capital of \$3.00 million for manufacturing and sale of PHE and PHE related products.

On December 30, 2013, the Company, closed the transaction contemplated by the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement dated October 10, 2013, whereby the buyers purchased 40% of the Company’s equity interests in the following PHE segment subsidiaries: SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy; SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.; SmartHeat (Shenyang Energy Equipment) Co. Ltd.; Hohhot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd.; and Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (collectively, the “Target Companies”). The purchase price was RMB 5,000,000. Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (“XinRui”) was 46% owned by SmartHeat US parent company prior to 40% equity interest sell.

The Company retained an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Target Companies from the buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which terminated on February 28, 2014. On March 27, 2014 the buyers exercised

their option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in the Target Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000. The Company will seek the approval of its shareholders prior to completing the sale. In the event such approval is not obtained, the buyers may terminate the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement. Should the buyers exercise their option to purchase the additional 40% equity interest and the Company's shareholders approve the sale, the Company has the option to require the buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000. The closing of transaction will be scheduled to occur after satisfaction of the conditions set forth in the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement, including, without limitation, approval of the transaction by a majority of the Company's shareholders entitled to vote.

The buyers consist of a group of 25 natural persons, all of whom are P.R.C. citizens, including Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang, managers of the Company's subsidiaries engaged in the PHE segment of its business, and Huajuan Ai and Yingkai Wang, the Company's Corporate Secretary and Acting Chief Accountant, respectively. Huajuan Ai, Wen Sha, Jun Wang and Xudong Wang are also principals in Northtech Holdings Inc.

Table of Contents

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of Presentation

The consolidated financial statements were prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”).

The consolidated interim financial information as of March 31, 2014 and for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, were prepared without audit, pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC (“Security and Exchange Commission”). Certain information and footnote disclosures normally included in consolidated financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP are not included. The interim consolidated financial information should be read in conjunction with the financial statements and notes thereto included in the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013, previously filed with the SEC.

In the opinion of management, all adjustments (which include normal recurring adjustments) necessary to present a fair statement of the Company’s consolidated financial position as of March 31, 2014, its consolidated results of operations and cash flows for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, as applicable, were made. The interim results of operations are not necessarily indicative of the operating results for the full fiscal year or any future periods.

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of SmartHeat’s U.S. parent, its subsidiaries Heat HP and Heat PHE, and their subsidiaries Taiyu, SanDeKe, SmartHeat Siping, Jinhui, SmartHeat Investment, SmartHeat Shenyang Energy, SmartHeat Trading, Ruicheng, SmartHeat Germany, SmartHeat Shenyang Heat Pump, and Heat Exchange, which are collectively referred to as the “Company.” All significant intercompany accounts and transactions were eliminated in consolidation. After the sale of 40% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, Shenyang Energy, Ruicheng and Xinrui (See Note 9) on December 30, 2013, the Company now owns 60% of Taiyu, Siping and Shenyang Energy, and 30.6% of Ruicheng, which is accounted for under the equity method of accounting .

Equity Method Investee

Prior to the sale of 40% equity interest of Taiyu, Siping, Shenyang Energy, Ruicheng and Xinrui, the Company owned 46% of XinRui and accounts for this investment under the equity method of accounting (ASC 323-30). The Company recorded its investment at original cost. This investment increased with income and decreased for dividends and losses that accrued to the Company. After 40% equity interest sale on December 30, 2013, the Company now owns 30.6% of Ruicheng (See Note 9) and 27.6% of XinRui, which are accounted for under the equity method of accounting.

Use of Estimates

In preparing the financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP, management makes estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements, as well as the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Significant estimates, required by management, include the recoverability of long-lived assets, allowance for doubtful accounts and the reserve for obsolete and slow-moving inventories. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Cash and Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, the Company considers all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Company

maintained restricted cash deposit in several bank accounts for the purposes described below.

	2014		2013
		(In millions)	
Support of performance guarantee	\$ 0.66		\$ 1.16
Support of bank acceptance	0.78		1.29
Support of letter of credit	0.02		0.01
Total restricted cash - current	\$ 1.46		\$ 2.46
Performance guarantee -- noncurrent	\$ 0.25		\$ 0.14

Table of Contents

The following table presents in U.S. dollars (“USD”) the amount of cash and equivalents held by the Company as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, based on the jurisdiction of deposit. The Company’s U.S. parent holds cash and equivalents in U.S. bank accounts denominated in USD.

	United States		China		Germany		Total
March 31, 2014	\$	452,950	\$	6,764,771	\$	1,193,422	\$ 8,411,143
December 31, 2013	\$	251,461	\$	11,326,282	\$	2,024,656	\$ 13,602,399

Accounts and Retentions Receivable

The Company maintains reserves for potential credit losses on accounts receivable. Management reviews the composition of accounts receivable and analyzes historical bad debts, customer concentrations, customer credit worthiness, current economic trends and changes in customer payment patterns to evaluate the adequacy of these reserves. Based on historical collection activity, the Company had allowances of \$55.33 million and \$48.25 million at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

At March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Company had retentions receivable from customers for product quality assurance of \$4.02 and \$4.44 million, respectively. The retention rate varies from 5% to 20% of the sales price with variable terms from 3 to 24 months depending on the shipping date, and for PHE Units, the customer acceptance date, of the products and the number of heating seasons that the warranty period covers. The Company had allowances of \$0.18 million and \$0 at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

Accounts receivable is net of unearned interest of \$26,416 and \$26,655 at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively. Unearned interest is imputed interest on accounts receivable with due dates over 1 year from the invoice date discounted at the Company’s borrowing rate of 6.15% at December 31, 2012. The Company did not record additional unearned interest after December 31, 2012 due to no long-term accounts receivable.

Bad Debt Allowance

The Company records approximately 50% of accounts receivable aged over 180 days from the payment due date and 100% accounts receivable aged over 360 days from the payment due date as bad debt allowance. Management of the Company’s subsidiaries further analyzes each individual customer for which it was taken a bad debt allowance to further assess the likelihood of collectability. Customers which are either state-owned or have a history of support from the state, or larger companies with long operating histories, that management of the Company’s subsidiaries believe the chance of non-payment will be remote, are excluded for the purpose of calculating bad debt allowance.

Advance to Suppliers

The Company makes advances to certain vendors to purchase raw material and equipment for production. The advances are interest-free and unsecured.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined on a moving weighted-average basis. The difference is recorded as a cost of goods sold, if the current market value is lower than their historical cost. In addition, the Company makes an inventory impairment provision analysis at each period end for inventory held over 360 days. Cost of work in progress and finished goods comprises direct material, direct labor and an allocated portion of production overheads.

Certain raw materials, such as stainless steel products, plates, shims, gaskets, and pump valves, require longer than normal procurement periods, or “lead times,” with some procurement periods running longer than six months. To guarantee availability of raw materials for production and sales, the Company’s subsidiaries, based on historical sale patterns, estimate and purchase material for the upcoming period.

Table of Contents

As part of inventory impairment analysis, the Company performs an evaluation of raw materials stored over one year and not anticipated to be consumed, and an evaluation of potential impairment to the quality of these raw materials. If management anticipates that obsolete raw materials in inventory can be utilized and will be consumed within the next six months through new customer orders or substitute orders, no impairment is recorded. The Company collects information about delayed and canceled contracts and met with affected customers to discuss their financing situation and their projections of future orders. Finished goods manufactured for delayed and canceled contracts that the Company does not expect to be reinstated and contracts for which the Company has been unable to find substitute customers become impaired.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost, net of accumulated depreciation. Expenditures for maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred; additions, renewals and betterments are capitalized. When property and equipment are retired or otherwise disposed of, the related cost and accumulated depreciation are removed from the respective accounts and any gain or loss is included in operations. Depreciation of property and equipment is provided using the straight-line method with a 10% salvage value and estimated lives as follows:

Buildings	20 years
Vehicles	5 years
Office equipment	5 years
Production equipment	5-10 years

Land Use Rights

Right to use land is stated at cost less accumulated amortization. Amortization is provided using the straight-line method over 50 years.

Warranties

The Company offers to all customers standard warranties on its products for one or two heating seasons depending on the terms negotiated. The Company accrues for warranty costs based on estimates of the costs that may be incurred under its warranty obligations. The warranty expense and related accrual is included in the Company's selling expenses and other payables respectively, and is recorded when revenue is recognized. Factors that affect the Company's warranty liability include the number of units sold, its estimates of anticipated rates of warranty claims, costs per claim and estimated support labor costs and the associated overhead. The Company periodically assesses the adequacy of its recorded warranty liabilities and adjusts the amounts as necessary.

Activity in the Company's warranty reserve from January 1, 2013, to March 31, 2014, is as follows:

	2014	2013
Beginning balance	\$ 472,558	\$ 517,076
Provisions	406,625	331,989
Actual costs incurred	(175,030)	(376,507)
Ending balance in current liabilities (Note 13)	\$ 704,153	\$ 472,558

Research and Development Costs

Research and development (“R&D”) costs are expensed as incurred and included in general and administrative expenses. These costs primarily consist of cost of materials used, salaries paid for the Company’s development department and fees paid to third parties. R&D costs for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, were \$157,371 and \$122,437, respectively.

Table of Contents

Revenue Recognition

The Company's revenue recognition policies comply with SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin ("SAB") 104 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605). Sales revenue is recognized when PHEs, heat meters and heat pumps are delivered, and for PHE Units when customer acceptance occurs, the price is fixed or determinable, no other significant obligations of the Company exist and collectability is reasonably assured. Payments received before all of the relevant criteria for revenue recognition met are recorded as unearned revenue under "Advance from customers."

The Company's sales generally provide for 30% of the purchase price on placement of an order, 30% on delivery, 30% upon installation and acceptance of the equipment after customer testing and 10% no later than the termination of the standard warranty period, which ranges from 3 to 24 months from the acceptance date.

Due to the slowdown of the Chinese economy and tightened monetary policy, and to attract and retain customers, the Company's subsidiaries adjusted their contract and payment terms to permit more flexible and longer payment terms.

Sales revenue is the invoiced value of goods, net of value-added tax ("VAT"). All of the Company's products sold in the PRC are subject to a VAT of 17% of gross sales price. This VAT may be offset by the VAT paid by the Company on raw materials and other materials purchased in China and included in the cost of producing the Company's finished product. The Company recorded VAT payable and VAT receivable net of payments in the financial statements. The Company files VAT tax returns on line with PRC tax authorities and offsets the payables against the receivables. SmartHeat Germany, the Company's German subsidiary, is subject to 19% VAT.

Sales and purchases are recorded net of VAT collected and paid as the Company acts as an agent for the government. VAT taxes are not affected by the income tax holiday.

Sales returns and allowances were \$0 for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013. The Company does not provide a right of return, price protection or any other concessions to its customers.

The Company provides a standard warranty to all customers, which is not considered an additional service; rather, an integral part of the product's sale. The Company believes the existence of its standard product warranty in a sales contract does not constitute a deliverable in the arrangement and thus there is no need to apply the EITF 00-21 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605-25) separation and allocation model for a multiple deliverable arrangement. SFAS 5 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 450) specifically addresses the accounting for standard warranties and neither SAB 104 nor EITF 00-21 supersedes SFAS 5. The Company believes that accounting for its standard warranty pursuant to SFAS 5 does not impact revenue recognition because the cost of honoring the warranty can be reliably estimated.

The Company charges for after-sales services provided after the expiration of the warranty period, with after-sales services mainly consisting of cleaning PHEs and repairing and exchanging parts. The Company recognizes such revenue when the service is provided. For the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, revenue from after-sales services after the expiration of the warranty period was \$46,244 and \$81,630, respectively, which was recorded in other income.

Cost of Goods Sold

Cost of goods sold ("COGS") consists primarily of material costs and direct labor and manufacturing overhead that are directly attributable to the products. Write-down of inventories to the lower of cost or market is also recorded in COGS. Company also records inventory reserve for inventories aging over 360 days to COGS.

Advance from Customers

The Company records payments received from customers in advance of their orders to advance account. These orders normally are delivered within a reasonable period of time based upon contract terms and customer demand.

Table of Contents

Statement of Cash Flows

In accordance with SFAS No. 95, "Statement of Cash Flows," codified in FASB ASC Topic 230, cash flows from the Company's operations are calculated based upon the local currencies. As a result, amounts shown on the statement of cash flows may not necessarily agree with changes in the corresponding asset and liability on the balance sheet.

Basic and Diluted Earnings (Loss) per Share (EPS)

Basic EPS is computed by dividing income available to common shareholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period. Diluted EPS is computed similarly, except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if the potential common shares had been issued and if the additional common shares were dilutive. Diluted EPS are based on the assumption that all dilutive convertible shares and stock options were converted or exercised. Dilution is computed by applying the treasury stock method. Under this method, options and warrants are assumed to have been exercised at the beginning of the period (or at the time of issuance, if later), and as if funds obtained thereby were used to purchase common stock at the average market price during the period.

Basic and diluted shares outstanding are the same for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, because the common stock equivalent of the convertible securities outstanding, consisting of unexercised options issued to the Company's directors and an officer, are anti-dilutive and, accordingly, were excluded from the computation of diluted loss per share. At March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, options to purchase 2,500 shares of common stock were outstanding and exercisable, respectively.

Foreign Currency Translation and Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The accounts of the U.S. parent company are maintained in USD. The functional currency of the Company's China subsidiaries is the Chinese Yuan Renminbi ("RMB") and the functional currency of SmartHeat Germany, the Company's subsidiary in Germany, is the Euro ("EUR"). The accounts of the China subsidiaries and German subsidiary were translated into USD in accordance with SFAS No. 52, "Foreign Currency Translation" (codified in FASB ASC Topic 830). According to SFAS No. 52, all assets and liabilities were translated at the exchange rate on the balance sheet date, stockholders' equity was translated at the historical rates and statement of operations items were translated at the average exchange rate for the period. The resulting translation adjustments are reported under other comprehensive income in accordance with SFAS No. 130, "Reporting Comprehensive Income" (codified in FASB ASC Topic 220).

The RMB to USD exchange rates and EUR to USD exchange rates in effect as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, and the average exchange rates for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013 are as following. The exchange rates used in translation from RMB to USD were published by State Administration of Foreign Exchange of the People's Republic of China ("SAFE"). The exchange rates used in translation from EUR to USD were published by OANDA Rates.

	Average Exchange Rate For the Three Months Ended		Balance Sheet Date Exchange Rate	
	3/31/14	3/31/13	3/31/14	12/31/13
RMB - USD	6.1180	6.2785	6.1521	6.0969
EUR - USD	0.7298	0.7572	0.7272	0.7263

Segment Reporting

FASB ASC Topic 280, Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information, requires use of the “management approach” model for segment reporting. The management approach model is based on the way a company’s management organizes segments within the company for making operating decisions and assessing performance. Reportable segments are based on products and services, geography, legal structure, management structure, or any other manner in which management disaggregates a company.

Table of Contents

The Company has two operating segments: 1) plate heating equipment, meters and related products; and 2) heat pumps and related products. These operating segments were determined based on the nature of the products offered. Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise about which separate financial information is available that is evaluated regularly by the chief operating decision-maker in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. The Company's chief executive officer and acting chief accountant were identified as the chief operating decision makers. The Company's chief operating decision makers direct the allocation of resources to operating segments based on the profitability, cash flows, and other measurement factors of each respective segment. Historically they were not segmented because the heat pump business was relatively small compared to the plate heating business and both businesses reported to the same executives; however, the Company's Board and senior management determined that it is useful and efficient to analyze and manage these businesses separately starting from 2013.

The Company evaluates performance based on several factors, of which the primary financial measure is business segment income before taxes. The following table shows the operations of the Company's reportable segments for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, and as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

	Three Months Ended March 31,	
	2014	2013
Revenue from unaffiliated customers:		
Plate heating, meters and related	\$ 4,385,142	\$ 5,671,793
Heat pumps and related	574,824	496,638
Consolidated	4,959,966	6,168,431
Loss from operations:		
Plate heating, meters and related	(12,049,483)	(11,397,442)
Heat pumps and related	(1,132,584)	(1,242,462)
Corporation	(526,827)	(173,194)
Consolidated	(13,708,894)	(12,813,098)
Net loss:		
Plate heating, meters and related	(12,196,826)	(11,582,874)
Heat pumps and related	(1,065,777)	(1,071,012)
Corporation	(583,809)	(214,730)
Consolidated	(13,846,412)	(12,868,616)
Depreciation and amortization:		
Plate heating, meters and related	390,163	382,667
Heat pumps and related	127,856	122,981
Corporation	39,659	18,145
Consolidated	557,678	523,793
Total assets:		
Plate heating, meters and related	109,992,610	127,649,910
Heat pumps and related	42,564,849	13,674,622
Corporation	4,243,515	4,282,942
Inter-segment elimination	(47,187,182)	(16,153,739)
Consolidated	\$ 109,613,792	\$ 129,453,735

Table of Contents

New Accounting Pronouncements

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-01, Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323), Accounting for Investments in Qualified Affordable Housing Projects. The objective of this Update is to provide guidance on accounting for investments by a reporting entity in flow-through limited liability entities that manage or invest in affordable housing projects that qualify for the low-income housing tax credit. The amendments in this Update permit reporting entities to make an accounting policy election to account for their investments in qualified affordable housing projects using the proportional amortization method if certain conditions are met. The amendments in this Update should be applied retrospectively to all periods presented. A reporting entity that uses the effective yield method to account for its investments in qualified affordable housing projects before the date of adoption may continue to apply the effective yield method for those preexisting investments. The amendments in this Update are effective for public business entities for annual periods and interim reporting periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Company's financial statements.

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-05, Service Concession Arrangements (Topic 853), The objective of this Update is to specify that an operating entity should not account for a service concession arrangement within the scope of this Update as a lease in accordance with Topic 840, Leases. Service concession arrangements may become more prevalent in the United States as public-sector entities seek alternative ways to provide public services on a more efficient and cost-effective basis. The amendments apply to an operating entity of a service concession arrangement entered into with a public-sector entity grantor when the arrangement meets certain conditions. The amendments in this Update should be applied on a modified retrospective basis to service concession arrangements that exist at the beginning of an entity's fiscal year of adoption. The modified retrospective approach requires the cumulative effect of applying this Update to arrangements existing at the beginning of the period of adoption to be recognized as an adjustment to the opening retained earnings balance for the annual period of adoption. The amendments are effective for a public business entity for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Company's financial statements.

As of March 31, 2014, there is no recently issued accounting standards not yet adopted that would have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

Reclassification

Certain prior year amounts were reclassified to conform to the manner of presentation in the current period, which includes the reclassification of a \$2.99 million advance from customers to other payable in the balance sheet.

3. INVENTORIES

Inventories at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, were as follows:

	2014	2013
Raw materials	\$ 47,239,981	\$ 48,258,773
Work in process	9,590,046	6,822,102
Finished goods	12,557,285	12,639,202
Total	69,387,312	67,720,077
Inventory allowance	(12,437,811)	(11,395,714)
Inventories, net	\$ 56,949,501	\$ 56,324,363

4. NOTES RECEIVABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

The Company sold goods to its customers and received commercial notes (bank acceptance) from them in lieu of payments for accounts receivable. The Company discounted the commercial notes with the bank or endorsed the commercial notes to vendors for payment of their own obligations or to get cash from third parties. Most of the commercial notes have a maturity of less than six months. As of March 31, 2014, the Company was contingently liable for the notes endorsed to vendors of \$0.22 million.

Table of Contents

5. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT, NET

Property and equipment consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Buildings	\$ 4,935,499	\$ 4,980,184
Production equipment	8,498,123	8,599,701
Office equipment	1,115,131	1,124,176
Vehicles	932,184	940,624
Total	15,480,937	15,644,685
Less: accumulated depreciation	(5,719,754)	(5,459,525)
Property & equipment, net	\$ 9,761,183	\$ 10,185,160

Depreciation for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, was \$355,400 and \$354,400, respectively.

6. OTHER RECEIVABLES, PREPAYMENTS AND DEPOSITS

Other receivables, prepayments and deposits consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively:

	2014	2013
Advance to third parties	\$ 10,589,716	\$ 10,059,572
Deposit for public bids of sales contracts	619,346	758,465
Prepayment for freight, related, insurance, advertisement and consulting expenses	55,433	73,773
Other deposits	69,406	53,863
Advance to employees	864,051	926,441
Others	939,239	680,588
Total	13,137,191	12,552,702
Less: bad debt allowance	(11,004,938)	(9,908,180)
Other receivables (net), prepayments & deposits	\$ 2,132,253	\$ 2,644,522

Advance to third parties were short-term unsecured advances to unrelated parties with payment usually due within a year and includes an advance to Siping Beifang of RMB 22.13 million (\$3.60 million) that is non-interest bearing and with due date extended to September 2014, and an advance to an unrelated company of RMB 41.02 million (\$6.67 million) that is non-interest bearing and will be collected by the end of June 2014.

Deposits for public bidding represented the deposits for bidding on expected contracts, which will be returned to the Company after the bidding process is completed, usually within three to four months from the payment date. Prepayment for freight, related insurance expenses and advertisement represented prepaid shipping and freight insurance expenses for customers and is generally repaid upon customer receipt of products and prepaid advertising expense.

Other deposits mainly consisted of deposits for rents, payroll expense and utilities. Advance to employees represented short-term loans to employees and advances for business trips and related expenses. Other receivables (consisting of advance to third parties and employees, deposit for public bids and others), prepayments and deposits are reimbursed or settled within 12 months.

7. INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Intangible assets consisted mainly of land use rights, trademarks, computer software, know-how technology, customer lists and covenants not to compete. All land in the PRC is government-owned and cannot be sold to any individual or company. However, the government grants the user a “land use right” to use the land. The Company acquired land use rights during 2005 for RMB 3,549,682 (\$0.44 million). In June 2009, the Company acquired land use rights for \$3.1 million from SipingBeifang. In November 2010, the Company’s subsidiary, SmartHeat Energy, acquired land use rights for \$10.10 million. The Company has the right to use the land for 50 years and is amortizing such rights on a straight-line basis for 50 years.

Table of Contents

Intangible assets consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively:

	Estimated Useful Life (In years)	2014	2013
Land use rights	50	\$ 15,031,461	\$ 15,167,552
Know-how technology	5 – 10	903,246	911,423
Customer lists	5	212,913	214,841
Covenants not to compete	5	115,824	116,873
Software	5	459,779	680,049
Trademarks	7	295,870	298,549
Total		17,019,093	17,389,287
Less: accumulated amortization		(2,428,730)	(2,503,664)
Intangible assets, net		\$ 14,590,363	\$ 14,885,623

Amortization of intangible assets for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, was \$162,600 and \$151,200, respectively. Annual amortization for the next five years from March 31, 2014, is expected to be \$498,985, \$458,779, \$452,892, \$434,614 and \$391,056, and \$12,354,037 thereafter.

8. CONSTRUCTION IN PROGRESS

The Company had construction in progress of \$1.33 million at March 31, 2014, consisting of three ongoing projects.

1) SmartHeat Energy was building a factory for a total estimated cost of \$9.00 million, of which the Company paid \$0.47 million as of March 31, 2014. The Company halted construction of the factory resulting from SmartHeat Energy returning the previously purchased land use right to the local authority where the factory was being built due to the adjustment of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority (see Note 13).

2) SmartHeat Siping has a construction project of \$36,000 for the laying of a foundation for its machinery installation. This foundation project will be completed by the end of June 2014.

3) Taiyu paid \$0.82 million for equipment and installation, this project was completed in July 2013 and is in the stage of final inspection. The Company expects to complete the inspection and put into operation by the end of June 2014.

9. LONG TERM INVESTMENT

Prior to December 30, 2013, the Company invested \$722,700 to establish XinRui. The Company owned 46% of XinRui and accounted for this investment under the equity method. On December 30, 2013, the Company sold 40% equity interest of XinRui and owns 27.6% of Xinrui after the sale (See Note 2). The investment in Xinrui after the sale was \$612,808. The investment income from XinRui was \$1,815 during the three months ended March 31, 2014.

The unaudited condensed Statement of Income of XinRui for the three months ended March 31, 2014 is below:

Net revenue	\$ 124,052
Cost of revenue	(76,493)
Gross profit	47,559
Operating expenses	38,789

Income from operations	8,770
Non-operating loss	(3)
Income tax expense	(2,192)
Net income	\$ 6,575

Prior to December 30, 2013, the Company invested \$771,600 for 51% of the equity in Ruicheng. The Company sold 40% equity interest of Ruicheng on December 30, 2013, and owns 30.6% of Ruicheng after the sale (See Note 2). The investment in Ruicheng after the sale was \$321,997. The investment loss from Ruicheng was \$5,423 during the three months ended March 31, 2014.

Table of Contents

The unaudited condensed Statement of Income of Ruicheng for the three months ended March 31, 2014 is below:

Net revenue	\$ 75,126
Cost of revenue	(54,319)
Gross profit	20,807
Operating expenses	41,963
Loss from operations	(21,156)
Non-operating income	3,432
Income tax expense	-
Net loss	\$ (17,724)

10. MAJOR CUSTOMERS AND VENDORS

Two customers accounted for 34% of total sales for the three months ended March 31, 2014, each customer accounted for 17% of total sales. At March 31, 2014, total receivable from the two customers was \$1,438,641.

For the three months ended March 31, 2013, four customers accounted for 64% of the Company's total sales, with each customer accounted for 28%, 15%, 11%, and 10% of total sales, respectively. At March 31, 2013, the total accounts receivable from these customers was \$9,670,657.

For the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, no vendors accounted for over 10% of the Company's total purchases.

11. TAXES RECEIVABLE

Taxes receivable consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Income	\$ 179,142	\$ 180,764
Value-added	565,742	787,293
Other	22,347	21,578
Total	\$ 767,231	\$ 989,635

12. TAXES PAYABLE

Taxes payable consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Income	\$ -	\$ 516
Value-added	-	160,118
Other	16,965	36,444
Total	\$ 16,965	\$ 197,078

Table of Contents

13. ACCRUED LIABILITIES AND OTHER PAYABLES

Accrued liabilities and other payables consisted of the following at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013
Advance from third parties	\$ 3,282,217	\$ 3,378,167
Payable to Siping Beifang	2,290,186	2,306,184
Payable for equipment purchase	319,403	322,295
Deposit from customer	2,961,428	2,988,240
Refund of land use right purchased	4,585,751	4,627,270
Others	1,552,575	1,738,241
Warranty reserve (See Note 2)	704,153	472,558
Accrued expenses	1,720,138	1,382,051
Total	\$ 17,415,851	\$ 17,215,006

Advances from third parties were short-term, non-interest-bearing advances from third parties due on demand. Payable to Siping Beifang represented loans to them without interest and payable upon demand. Deposit from customer represented advance payment from a customer for the Company to execute the sales order; however, the customer wanted to cancel the order after the Company commenced manufacturing and the Company refused to return the deposit claiming breach of the contract by the customer. The dispute was filed with the court and is currently docketed for trial.

Refund of land use right previously purchased represented the partial refund received for the land use right SmartHeat Energy purchased in November 2010. SmartHeat Energy later cancelled the purchase due to the adjustments of the overall development plan of the area by the local authority. The local government agreed to the cancellation and refunded SmartHeat Energy \$4.59 million as of December 31, 2013, and was committed to refund SmartHeat Energy the remaining purchase price. On May 21, 2014, SmartHeat Energy and Shenyang City Development and Land Resource Bureau Economy and Technology Development Office entered into an official agreement, whereby full purchase price of the land use right will be returned to SmartHeat Energy in installments within 5 days from the effective date of the official agreement. SmartHeat Energy will make the ownership change of the land use right within 3 days upon receiving the first installment of refund from the local authority effective on May 21, 2014. However, as of this report date, SmartHeat Energy did not receive first installment. Currently the land is used by the third party.

Others represented payables for the Company's certain construction and installation projects, and miscellaneous expenses including postage, business insurance, employee benefits, project bidding fee, and medical insurance, etc. Accrued expenses mainly consisted of accrued property and land rental fee of \$0.60 million, accrued payroll of \$0.51 million, accrued welfare, interest and utility.

14. NOTES PAYABLE – BANK ACCEPTANCES

Notes payable represented the conversion of accounts payable into notes payable, which were issued by a bank. The Company deposited a portion of the acceptance amount into the bank as collateral. The terms of the notes range from 3-6 months and bear no interest. At March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Company deposited \$0.78 million and \$1.29 million with the bank as restricted cash for the bank issuing the notes (See note 2). The restricted cash is refundable when the notes are repaid.

Table of Contents

15. LOANS PAYABLE

Short-Term Bank Loans

The Company was obligated for the following short-term loans as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013:

	2014	2013	Subsidiary obligated
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 7,200,000 entered into on February 20, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6% with maturity on February 19, 2015. \$	1,170,332	\$ -	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 2,640,565 entered into on January 3, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on July 29, 2014. This loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	429,213	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 7,935,243 entered into on January 3, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on July 29, 2014. The loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,289,843	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 16,080,000 entered into on January 16, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 8, 2014. The loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	2,613,741	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 4,685,723 entered into on January 22, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 20, 2014. The loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	761,646	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,377,441 entered into on January 22, 2014. The loan bore interest at 6.22% with maturity on August 20, 2014. The loan was pledged by the Taiyu's accounts receivable.	874,082	-	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 13,344,190 entered into on June 26, 2012. The loan bore interest at 6.16% with maturity on January 18, 2014. The loan was repaid at maturity.	-	2,188,684	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on November 30, 2012. The loan bore interest at 7.87% with maturity on November 22, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	1,625,461	1,640,178	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 40,000,000 entered into on March 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on March 10, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Siping, HeatPump and management of Chinese subsidiaries. This loan was repaid at maturity.	-	6,560,711	Taiyu

From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 10,000,000 entered into on May 21, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.60% with maturity on May 20, 2014. This loan was repaid at maturity.	1,625,461	1,640,178	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on August 29, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on August 29, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	812,731	820,089	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 5,000,000 entered into on September 4, 2013. The loan bore interest at 7.20% with maturity on September 4, 2014. The loan was guaranteed by Taiyu.	812,731	820,089	Siping
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 30,000,000 entered into on August 8, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.90% with maturity on August 7, 2014.	4,876,384	4,920,533	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on September 18, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on September 17, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,609,207	1,623,776	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 9,900,000 entered into on October 11, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on October 10, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable.	1,609,207	1,623,776	Taiyu
From a commercial bank in the PRC for RMB 16,000,000 entered into on July 10, 2013. The loan bore interest at 6.0% with maturity on January 9, 2014. This loan was pledged by Taiyu's accounts receivable. This loan was repaid at maturity.	-	2,624,285	Taiyu
TOTAL	\$ 20,110,039	\$ 24,462,299	

Table of Contents

The banks sometimes require loan guarantee provided by a third party to the Company, the third party loan guarantor was Liaoning Wugang Metal Trading Co., Ltd. (“Liaoning Wugang”), with a maximum guarantee of RMB 46 million (\$7.32 million). The guarantee is for the loans entered from February 20, 2012 to August 16, 2013, with the guarantee length equal to the loan term; the guarantee service was extended for the loans entered or will be entered from September 18, 2013 to September 12, 2014 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the maximum guarantee amount was revised to RMB 44 million (\$7.05 million). The Company was not required to pay any guarantee fees. However, the Company has contracted to provide similar guarantees for up to RMB 20 million (\$3.18 million) to Liaoning Guorui Commercial Trading Co., Ltd. (“Guorui”). The guarantee is for the loans entered from January 12, 2012 to January 11, 2013 with the guarantee length equal to the loan term, the Company does not require Guorui to pay any guarantee fees. The Company did not extend the guarantee term for Guorui after January 11, 2013. These arrangements are common to the banking industry in China, and there are no other relationships between the Company and Liaoning Wugang or Guorui, both of whom were referred to the Company by the lending bank. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, the Company did not have any loan guarantees from Liaoning Wugang.

Holding Company Credit Agreement – Credit Line Payable

On July 27, 2012, the Company, entered into a secured, revolving credit facility under the terms of a Secured Credit Agreement (the “Credit Facility” or the “Credit Agreement”) with Northtech Holdings Inc., a British Virgin Islands business corporation (“Northtech”), owned by certain members of the Company’s former management, James Wang, Rhett Wang and Wen Sha. Jane Ai, the Company’s Corporate Secretary is also a part owner of Northtech. As amended, the Credit Facility provides for borrowings of up to \$2.5 million.

Borrowings under the Credit Facility are secured by the Company’s deposit accounts located in the United States, its trademarks in the PRC and 55% of its equity in each of its wholly-, directly owned subsidiaries. An origination fee of 4% of the Committed Amount was accrued to Northtech upon the signing of the Credit Agreement. As amended, Borrowings bear interest of 10% annually, payable quarterly, and the Credit Facility matured on April 30, 2013, and extended to April 30, 2014 with an extension fee of 4% of the Committed Amount. Generally, borrowings may be prepaid at any time without premium or penalty, provided however that if the Company prepays any amount due under the Credit Facility from the proceeds of another instrument or agreement of indebtedness, the Company shall pay a 10% prepayment fee. All amounts due under the Credit Facility may, at the Company’s option, be paid in either cash or restricted shares of the Company’s common stock.

On June 25, 2013, the Board approved second amendment to the credit and security agreement and on August 23, 2013, the Company entered into second amendment to the credit and security agreement with Northtech, which redefined the “base rate”, and adjusted the base rate to 10% annually, compounded quarterly, effective January 1, 2013. The Company delivered to Northtech 100,000 restricted shares of the Company’s common stock as an Amendment Fee (see Note 19), issued in September 2013.

On December 21, 2012, the Company’s BOD approved the issuance of 1,300,000 Restricted Shares of Common Stock to Northtech in cancellation of \$1,301,300 of indebtedness under the Credit Facility. The balance owing to Northtech under the Credit Agreement as of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013 was \$1,749,335 and \$1,396,378, respectively, and was recorded as a noncurrent obligation under ASC 470-10-45-12 through ASC 470-10-45-14 due to the Note being secured by 55% of the equity interest in each of HEAT PHE Inc. and HEAT HP Inc., and the Company’s option to repay the note by issuance of the Company’s shares.

The Company had \$100,000 payable to a consulting firm that was paid by a third party on behalf of the Company during 2012, this payable to the third party was assumed by Northtech on August 23, 2013, in exchange for 200,000 shares of the Company’s common stock issued in September 2013, and payable for a credit line balance from Northtech. The stock price was \$0.60 on August 23, 2013, the Company recognized \$20,000 loss for the settlement of

this payable by shares with Northtech.

On March 26, 2014, the Company gave notice to Northtech pursuant to the terms of the Credit and Security Agreement between the Company and Northtech, dated July 27, 2012, as amended, extending the maturity date on the Credit Agreement from April 30, 2014 to January 3, 2015. The Company elected to pay the extension fee of 4% of the credit line amount of \$2.5 million by issuing 200,000 shares of its common stock to Northtech at \$0.50 per share. The BOD approved such extension on March 27, 2014.

Table of Contents

Long-Term Bank Loan

Taiyu entered into a long-term loan of \$2,113,100 (RMB 13 million) with China Construction Bank on November 30, 2013 with maturity on November 29, 2015. The interest rate for the loan is variable currently at 6.46%, and to be paid on the 20th of each month. This loan is guaranteed by Taiyu's building and land.

16. DEFERRED TAX ASSET (LIABILITY)

Deferred tax asset (liability) represented differences between the tax bases and book bases of property and equipment and intangible assets arising from the acquisition of SanDeKe and SmartHeat Pump, and bad debt allowance and provision of inventory impairment booked by the Company which was not allowed per tax purpose. As of March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, deferred tax asset (liability) consisted of the following:

	2014	2013
Deferred tax asset - current (bad debt allowance) \$	8,825,681	\$ 7,715,041
Deferred tax asset - current (inventory allowance)	2,534,346	2,321,878
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance to other receivable)	2,281,198	2,099,125
Deferred tax asset – current (allowance for advance to supplier)	413,245	398,224
Deferred tax asset – current (reserve for warranty)	82,703	75,808
Deferred tax asset – current (NOL)	6,985,472	6,405,272
Less: valuation allowance	(21,122,645)	(19,015,348)
Deferred tax assets, net \$	-	\$ -
Deferred tax liability - noncurrent (depreciation of fixed assets) \$	(2,951)	\$ (17,177)

17. INCOME TAXES

The Company is subject to income taxes by entity on income arising in or derived from the tax jurisdiction in which each entity is domiciled. The Company's PRC subsidiaries file their income tax returns online with PRC tax authorities.

SmartHeat, the parent company, was incorporated in the U.S. and has net operating losses ("NOL") for income tax purposes, which can be carried forward for up to 20 years from the year the loss is incurred. SmartHeat has NOL carry forwards for income taxes of approximately \$6.99 million at March 31, 2014, which may be available to reduce future years' taxable income. Management believes the realization of benefits from these losses remains uncertain due to SmartHeat's limited operating history and continuing losses. Accordingly, a 100% deferred tax asset valuation allowance was provided.

Taiyu and SanDeKe are governed by the Income Tax Law of the PRC concerning privately-run enterprises, which are generally subject to tax at 25% on income reported in the statutory financial statements after appropriate tax adjustments. Under the Income Tax Law that became effective January 1, 2008, new high-tech enterprises given special support by the PRC government are subject to an income tax rate of 15%. Taiyu has been classified as a high-tech enterprise since 2009 and eligible for an income tax rate of 15% through 2014. Local PRC government reviews the high-tech status of such enterprises annually. The income tax rate for SanDeKe was 13% for 2012,

because of its foreign-invested enterprise status, and its income tax rate increased to 24% in 2013 and 25% in 2014.

SmartHeat Siping, Jinhui, SmartHeat Investment, SmartHeat Energy, SmartHeat Pump, SmartHeat Trading and Heat Exchange are subject to the regular 25% PRC income tax rate. SmartHeat Germany is subject to a 15% corporate income tax in Germany.

Table of Contents

The following table reconciles the U.S. statutory rates to the Company's effective tax (benefit) rate for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013:

	2014	2013
U.S. statutory tax (benefit) rates	(34.0)%	(34.0)%
Tax rate difference	8.6%	9.0%
Effect of tax holiday	7.7%	(0.9)%
Valuation allowance	17.6%	25.7%
Tax benefit per financial statements	(0.1)%	(0.2)%

The income tax (benefit) for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, consisted of the following:

	2014	2013
Income tax expense (benefit) - current	\$ (386)	\$ 245
Income tax benefit - deferred	(14,150)	(22,689)
Total income tax benefit	\$ (14,536)	\$ (22,444)

18. STATUTORY RESERVES AND RESTRICTED NET ASSETS

The Company's ability to pay dividends primarily depends on the Company receiving funds from its subsidiaries. Relevant PRC statutory laws and regulations permit payments of dividends by the Company's PRC subsidiaries only out of the subsidiary's retained earnings, if any, as determined in accordance with PRC accounting standards and regulations. The results of operations reflected in the financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP differ from those reflected in the statutory financial statements of the Company's PRC subsidiaries.

In accordance with the PRC Regulations on Enterprises with Foreign Investment and their articles of association, a foreign-invested enterprise ("FIE") established in the PRC is required to provide certain statutory reserves, which are appropriated from net profit as reported in the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. An FIE is required to allocate at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit to the surplus reserve until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the FIE's PRC statutory accounts. Appropriations to other funds are at the discretion of the board of directors for all FIEs. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. Additionally, shareholders of an FIE are required to contribute capital to satisfy the registered capital requirement of the FIE. Until such contribution of capital is satisfied, the FIE is not allowed to repatriate profits to its shareholders, unless otherwise approved by the State Administration of Foreign Exchange. Taiyu, SanDeKe, SmartHeat Siping, Jinhui, SmartHeat Investment and Ruicheng were established as FIEs and therefore are subject to the above-mandated restrictions on distributable profits. As of March 31, 2014, the Company met all registered capital requirements for its FIEs except for SmartHeat Investment, for which the Company is committed to contribute an additional \$40.00 million in registered capital by April 2015 (See note 21).

Additionally, in accordance with the Company Law of the PRC, a domestic enterprise is required to provide surplus reserve at least 10% of its annual after-tax profit until such reserve has reached 50% of its respective registered capital based on the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. A domestic enterprise is also required to provide discretionary surplus reserve, at the discretion of the board of directors, from the profits determined in accordance with the enterprise's PRC statutory accounts. The aforementioned reserves can only be used for specific purposes and are not distributable as cash dividends. SmartHeat Energy, SmartHeat Trading and SmartHeat Pump were established as domestic enterprises and therefore are subject to the above-mentioned restrictions on distributable profits.

As a result of these PRC laws and regulations that require annual appropriations of 10% of after-tax income to be set aside prior to payment of dividends as general reserve fund, the Company's PRC subsidiaries are restricted in their

ability to transfer a portion of their net assets to the Company as a dividend.

Table of Contents

19. STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

Stock Options to Independent Directors and Officer

On February 1, 2010, the Company issued stock options to an officer. The terms of the options were 5,000 shares at an exercise price per share of \$118.50, with a life of five years and vesting over two years as follows: 2,500 shares vested on June 30, 2011, and 2,500 shares vested on June 29, 2012. The options were valued using a volatility of 74%, risk free interest rate of 2.76%, and dividend yield of 0%. The grant-date FV of the options was \$367,107. On May 25, 2012, the officer resigned from his position as VP of Strategy and Development of the Company, and was not entitled to the remaining unvested options. The remaining obligations of the Company to the officer were released pursuant to a severance agreement and mutual release.

Based on the FV method under SFAS No. 123 (Revised), "Share Based Payment" ("SFAS 123(R)") (codified in FASB ASC Financial Instruments, Topic 718 & 505), the FV of each stock option granted is estimated on the date of the grant using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The Black-Scholes option-pricing model has assumptions for risk-free interest rates, dividends, stock volatility and expected life of an option grant. The risk-free interest rate is based upon market yields for U.S. Treasury debt securities at a maturity near the term remaining on the option. Dividend rates are based on the Company's dividend history. The stock volatility factor is based on the historical volatility of the Company's stock price. The expected life of an option grant is based on management's estimate. The FV of each option grant to independent directors is calculated by the Black-Scholes method and is recognized as compensation expense over the vesting period of each stock option award.

Following is a summary of the option activity:

	Number of Shares	Average Exercise Price per Share	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term in Years
Outstanding at January 1, 2013	3,500	97.80	1.65
Exercisable at January 1, 2013	3,500	97.80	1.65
Granted	-	-	-
Exercised	-	-	-
Forfeited	1,000	46.00	-
Outstanding at December31, 2013	2,500	\$ 118.5	1.34
Exercisable at December31, 2013	2,500	\$ 118.5	1.34
Granted	-	-	-
Exercised	-	-	-
Forfeited	-	-	-
Outstanding at March 31, 2014	2,500	\$ 118.5	0.83
Exercisable at March 31, 2014	2,500	\$ 118.5	0.83

There were no options exercised during the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013. The Company recorded \$0 as compensation expense for stock options during the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, respectively.

Common Stock Issued

The Company had \$100,000 payable to a consulting firm that was paid by a third party on behalf of the Company during 2012, this payable to the third party was assumed by Northtech on August 23, 2013, for 200,000 shares of the Company's common stock issued in September 2013. The stock price was \$0.60 on August 23, 2013, the Company recognized \$20,000 loss for the settlement of this payable by shares with Northtech (see Note 15).

On June 25, 2013, the Board approved second amendment to the credit and security agreement and on August 23, 2013, the Company entered into second amendment to the credit and security agreement with Northtech, which redefined the "base rate", and adjusted the base rate to 10% annually, compounded quarterly, effective January 1, 2013. The Company delivered Northtech 100,000 restricted shares of the Company's common stock as an Amendment Fee. The FV of the stocks issued for the Amendment fee was \$60,000 (See Note 15).

Table of Contents

On September 17, 2013, the Company's BOD approved the issuance of 100,000 restricted shares of common stock to Northtech for their consent to the Company to enter into an Equity Interest Purchase Agreement as contemplated by the stalking horse proposal and approved by the Company's Board. The stock price on the approval date is \$0.30, the fair value of the shares issued was \$30,000. Under the terms of the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement, the buyers agreed to purchase 40% of the Company's equity interests in the following PHE segment subsidiaries: Taiyu, SmartHeat Siping, SmartHeat Energy, Ruicheng, and XinRui (collectively, the "Target Companies"). The purchase price is RMB 5,000,000 (\$801,000), was paid by the buyers on December 30, 2013.

On March 27, 2014, The Compensation Committee of the Board approved to grant certain individuals the Company's common stock in recognition of their valuable services to the Company and its subsidiaries in 2013. The individual and number of shares granted is as follows: 100,000 shares to Oliver Bialowons, 50,000 shares to Huajun Ai, 50,000 shares to Xudong Wang and 50,000 shares to Kenneth Scripta. The stock price is \$0.15 on grant date, and the FV of the shares granted at the grant date is \$37,500 and was recorded as shares to be issued.

20. OTHER INCOME

The Company had net other income, of \$241,751 and \$310,298 for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, respectively. The net other income for the three months ended March 31, 2014 consisted of income (net) from sales of raw material of \$140,860, income (net) from after-sales services of \$24,640, government subsidy of \$46,371 and other non-operating income of \$29,880. The other income of \$310,298 for the three months ended March 31, 2013 mainly consisted of income (net), from selling of raw material of \$133,456; income (net) from after-sales services of \$33,243, government subsidy of \$39,818 and other non-operating income of \$103,781.

21. COMMITMENTS

Lease Agreements

The Company leased offices for its sales representative in several different cities under various one-year, non-cancellable and renewable operating lease agreements. Rental expense for the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, was \$84,178 and \$132,359, respectively.

Capital Contribution

The Company formed SmartHeat Investment on April 7, 2010, as an investment holding company with registered capital of \$70 million to enable its establishment and investment in new businesses in China. Under PRC company law, registered capital must be used in the operations of the domestic company within its approved business scope. SmartHeat Investment was established as a separate subsidiary of the Company to allow allocation of capital to new businesses in China separate from its existing subsidiaries and operations. As a PRC investment holding company, the \$70 million in approved registered capital of SmartHeat Investment is deemed a planned investment amount for the entity, not a traditional registered capital requirement under PRC corporate law. The Company contributed \$30 million in capital to SmartHeat Investment on April 15, 2010, from proceeds of its public offering that closed on September 22, 2009. On April 12, 2010, SmartHeat Investment formed SmartHeat Energy, a wholly owned subsidiary in Shenyang with registered capital of \$30 million, subsequently satisfied out of the registered capital of SmartHeat Investment, for the research, development, manufacturing and sale of energy products. As of March 31, 2014, the Company is committed to contributing the remaining \$40 million in registered capital to SmartHeat Investment by April 2015. The Company may satisfy this contribution through cash flow provided by operations, sales of assets, such as physical assets, financial assets, or interests in its subsidiaries, and funds raised through offerings of its securities, if and when the Company determines such offerings are required, and at such time that the Company identifies a new acquisition, investment or business opportunity to be financed through SmartHeat Investment,

although no specific investment candidate has been identified to date.

Restructuring Agreement with a Consulting Firm

On April 23, 2012, the Company entered into an agreement (“Agreement”) with Nimbus Restructuring Manager LLC (“Nimbus”), for advice on raising capital and restructuring the Company to maximize value for the benefit of all of the stockholders of the Company.

Upon execution of the Agreement, the Company paid \$200,000 as a deposit and a \$50,000 advance for future expenses incurred by Nimbus. Additionally, the Company paid \$70,000 per month for 6 months. An additional \$600,000 is to be paid upon the completion of the Company’s restructuring to the satisfaction of the Board.

Table of Contents

The Company also issued and sold to Nimbus 300,000 shares of the Company's restricted common stock for \$15,000, or \$0.05 per share, the Company has the right to repurchase such shares for \$0.20 per share until January 31, 2013, \$0.40 per share until September 30, 2013, \$0.60 per share until June 30, 2014, \$0.80 per share until March 31, 2015 and \$1.00 per share until January 31, 2016. On October 12, 2012, the Company issued 300,000 shares of stock to an affiliate of Nimbus at \$0.05 per share in accordance with the restructuring agreement.

The Company shall reimburse Nimbus and its affiliates for all reasonable and appropriate out-of-pocket expenses actually incurred in performance of the services specified in the Agreement.

On May 9, 2013, the Company entered a Restated Restructuring Agreement with Nimbus, which was intended to be a legally binding restatement of the Restructuring Agreement entered on April 23, 2012. Pursuant to the Restated Restructuring Agreement, the term was extended for an additional 12 monthly periods from original expiration date of January 23, 2013 to January 22, 2014. A monthly service fee of \$30,000 is to be paid on the first day of each month for 10 months through November 2013. In addition, a \$300,000 termination fee will be paid on the earlier of the expiration of the stated term or the termination by the Company.

On September 18, 2013, the Company entered Amendment #1 to the Restated Restructuring Agreement with Nimbus, pursuant to the Amendment, the service term was revised after the initial expiration date of January 23, 2013, for an extension of 10 additional month until November 2013, and thereafter extended for 4 additional months until March 2014. The termination fee of \$300,000 will be paid in 4 equal monthly payments of \$75,000 each commencing in December 2013 and running through March 2014 or on the earlier of the expiration of the Stated Term or the earlier termination by the Company.

As of March 31, 2014, the Company owed \$150,000 to Nimbus, which was included in other payable.

22. CONTINGENCIES

The Company's operations in the PRC are subject to specific considerations and significant risks not typically associated with companies in North America and Western Europe. These include risks associated with, among others, the political, economic and legal environments in China and foreign currency exchange. The Company's results may be adversely affected by changes in PRC government policies with respect to laws and regulations, anti-inflationary measures, currency conversion and remittance abroad and rates and methods of taxation, among other things.

The Company's sales, purchases and expense transactions in China are denominated in RMB and all of the Company's assets and liabilities in China are also denominated in RMB. The RMB is not freely convertible into foreign currencies under the current PRC law. In China, foreign exchange transactions are required by law to be transacted only by authorized financial institutions. Remittances in currencies other than RMB may require certain supporting documentation in order to affect the remittance.

Legal Proceedings

On August 31, 2012, a putative class action lawsuit, Steven Leshinsky v. James Wang, et. al., which purported to allege federal securities law claims against the Company and certain of its former officers and directors, was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. Thereafter, two plaintiffs filed competing motions to be appointed lead plaintiff in the proceeding. A lead plaintiff was appointed and an amended complaint was filed on January 28, 2013, by the Rosen Law Firm. The amended complaint included Oliver Bialowons, our President, and Michael Wilhelm, our former Chief Financial Officer, as defendants in the proceeding though they were not officers of the Company during the alleged class period. A second amended complaint was filed on April 8, 2013, under the caption Stream Sicav, Dharanendra Rai et al. v. James Jun Wang, Smartheat, Inc. et al., removing

Messrs. Wilhelm and Bialowons as defendants. The second amended complaint alleges two counts against the Company, both asserting violations of the federal securities laws arising from alleged insider sales or management sales of securities and alleged false disclosures relating to those sales. On May 8, 2013, we filed a motion to dismiss the second amended complaint which was denied. On March 17, 2014 the court, denied, the lead plaintiff's motion for class certification, without prejudice. Discovery is now proceeding. The pleadings and court orders are publicly available. We intend to vigorously defend this action, as we believe the allegations against us are without merit.

Table of Contents

CAUTIONARY STATEMENT FOR FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The comments made throughout this Quarterly Report should be read in conjunction with our Financial Statements and the Notes thereto, and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this document. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this document contain certain forward-looking information. When used in this discussion, the words, “believes,” “anticipates,” “expects” and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements. Such statements are subject to certain risks and uncertainties, which could cause actual results to differ materially from projected results, due to a number of factors beyond our control. We do not undertake to publicly update or revise any of our forward-looking statements, even if experience or future changes show that the indicated results or events will not be realized. Readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date hereof. Readers are also urged to carefully review and consider our discussions regarding the various factors that affect our business, which are described in this section and elsewhere in this report, and those listed in our other SEC filings.

Item 2. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

Overview

Through our subsidiaries we design, manufacture and sell clean technology plate heat exchangers (“PHE”), heat pumps (“HPs”) and related systems marketed principally in the People’s Republic of China (“PRC”). Our subsidiaries’ products are used in the industrial, residential and commercial markets to improve energy utilization and efficiencies, and to reduce pollution by reducing the need for coal-fired boilers. Our subsidiaries design, manufacture, sell and service PHEs, PHE Units, which combine PHEs with various pumps, temperature sensors, valves and automated control systems in systems custom designed by our in-house engineers, heat meters and heat pumps for use in commercial and residential buildings. Our subsidiaries also design, manufacture and sell spiral heat exchangers and tube heat exchangers. Our subsidiaries’ products and systems are an increasingly important element in providing a clean technology, mission-critical solution to energy consumption and air pollution problems in China and are commonly used in a wide variety of industrial processes where heat transfer is required. Common applications include energy conversion for heating, ventilation and air conditioning, or HVAC, and industrial use in petroleum refining, petrochemicals, metallurgy, food and beverage and chemical processing. Our subsidiaries sell their products under the SmartHeat and Taiyu brand names and also sell PHEs under the Sondex brand name as an authorized dealer of Sondex PHEs in China.

In addition, we offer HPs in China and in Germany under the Gustrower brand name. Our subsidiaries design and build HPs specific to customer specifications and particular operating conditions and are known for their high quality and efficiency. Our subsidiaries produce HPs in sizes that have applications in both the industrial and residential settings. We believe our subsidiaries’ HPs reduce the cost of heating and cooling by using recycled air as a heat source thereby reducing heat loss promoting energy saving and efficiency.

We are a U.S. holding company with no material assets other than the ownership interests of our subsidiaries through which we design, manufacture and sell our clean technology PHEs, HPs and related systems. We were incorporated in the State of Nevada on August 4, 2006, under the name Pacific Goldrim Resources, Inc., as an exploration stage corporation with minimal operations to engage in the exploration for silver, lead and zinc. On April 14, 2008, we changed our name to SmartHeat Inc. and entered into a Share Exchange Agreement to acquire Shenyang Taiyu Machinery & Electronic Equipment Co., Ltd., subsequently renamed SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd., or Taiyu, a privately held Sino-foreign joint venture (“JV”) company formed under the laws of the PRC on July 24, 2002, and engaged in the design, manufacture, sale and servicing of plate heat exchange products in China. The Share Exchange Agreement was entered into by SmartHeat, Taiyu and the shareholders of Taiyu. We received PRC government approval on May 28, 2008, of our subscription for 71.6% of the registered capital of Taiyu,

and approval on June 3, 2009, of the transfer of the remaining 28.4% ownership of Taiyu from the original JV shareholders who received shares of our common stock in the Share Exchange. As a result of the Share Exchange Agreement and subsequent transactions contemplated thereby, and receipt of the above PRC government approvals, Taiyu became our wholly foreign-owned enterprise, or WFOE.

As an expansion of our business following our acquisition of Taiyu, we acquired and established subsidiaries in China and Germany.

Table of Contents

The following chart displays our subsidiaries according to which operating segment they operate in:

Plate Heat Exchangers (PHE)	Heat Pumps (HP)
SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy Technology Co., Ltd.	SmartHeat (China) Investment Co., Ltd.
SanDeKe Co., Ltd.	SmartHeat (Shenyang) Heat Pump Technology Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat (Shenyang) Energy Equipment Co., Ltd.	SmartHeat Deutschland GmbH
SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.	SmartHeat (Shanghai) Trading Co., Ltd.
SmartHeat Heat Exchange Equipment Co.	Beijing SmartHeat Jinhui Energy Technology Co., Ltd.

Principal Factors Affecting Our Financial Performance

Our revenues are subject to fluctuations due to the timing of sales of high-value products, the impact of seasonal spending patterns, the timing and size of projects our customers perform, changes in overall spending levels in the industry, changes in PRC government fiscal policies, inflation in China and other unpredictable factors that may affect customer ordering patterns. Our revenues may fluctuate due to the seasonal nature of central heating services in the PRC because the equipment used in residential buildings must be delivered prior to the beginning of the heating season in late fall, which occurs during the third and fourth calendar quarters in China. We also anticipate decreased sales volume in the first calendar quarter compared to other quarters, as our customers generally install and test our products during this period, and are in the process of budgeting their new projects. Additionally, any significant delays in the commercial launch or any lack or delay of commercial acceptance of new products, unfavorable sales trends in existing product lines or impacts from the other factors mentioned above, could adversely affect our revenue growth or cause a decline in quarterly revenue.

In response to inflationary concerns, the PRC government tightened fiscal policies beginning in 2011 that contributed to a slowdown in many sectors of China's economy and restricted bank lending practices. China's economy continues the growing at a very slow pace. Historically, approximately 40% of our customers, representing the majority of our total sales, consist of state-owned enterprises in China. Many of these customers, the majority of which are real estate developers, encountered difficulties in recent years in obtaining grants from the PRC government and faced an extended bank loan application process, both of which typically are used to finance the purchase of our products. These conditions continued into 2014. Accordingly, the continued deflationary policy of the PRC government affected the number of new sales of our PHEs and PHE Units as certain state-owned enterprises deferred bidding for new projects because of their working capital difficulties or abandoned existing projects. The decline in new projects among state-owned enterprises and increased peer competition contributed to a decline in sales of our PHEs and PHE Units in 2011 through the first quarter of 2014. We also canceled contracts in 2011 with certain of these state-owned customers that were unable to make payments or that had requested adjustments to their payment terms in response to their financial difficulties. Although these events caused a decrease in our sales in 2011 through the first quarter of 2014, a portion of the canceled year 2011 PHE and PHE Unit orders were reinstated in 2012, and additional orders and contracts that were canceled or partially delayed are performed in 2013 and first quarter of 2014, which reduced the impact of the drop in our sales over the long term. Furthermore, the PRC government remains committed to the construction of affordable housing projects and emission-reduction and energy-saving policies, which we believe will continue to drive demand for our clean technology heat transfer products.

Our revenues also may fluctuate significantly due to material costs; we experienced and anticipate continued fluctuation in raw material costs as a result of world economic conditions, such as the price of stainless steel used to

produce plates, our PHEs and PHE Units. We monitor the commodities markets for pricing trends and changes, but do not engage in hedging to protect against raw material fluctuations. Instead, we attempt to mitigate the short-term risks of price swings by purchasing raw materials in advance based on production needs and projected sales. We typically experience stronger sales during the second half of the year, which is the start of fall and winter in China, during which we historically generate the majority of our revenue. Accordingly, we increased our inventory and advances to suppliers during the first three quarters of each year in anticipation of our historical high season for production. Management believes our current levels of increased inventory resulting from the unexpected abandonment of projects and cancelation of orders by certain customers in 2011 and 2012 was consumed gradually in 2013 and 2014 and the following years as we fulfill new orders and delayed and reinstated contracts. Although we currently are able to obtain adequate supplies of raw materials, it is impossible to predict future availability or cost. Unfavorable fluctuations in the price, quality or availability of required raw materials could negatively affect our cash flows and ability to meet the demands of our customers, which could result in the loss of future sales.

Table of Contents

Our profitability depends upon the margin between the cost to us of goods used in the manufacturing process, such as plates, pumps, water tanks, sensors, control systems and other raw materials, as well as our fabrication costs associated with converting such goods and raw materials compared to the selling price of our products, and the overall supply of raw materials. We intend to base the selling prices of our products upon the associated raw materials costs to us. We may not be able to pass all increases in raw material costs and ancillary acquisition costs associated with taking possession of raw materials through to our customers, however, and there may be a time lag as we bid on new projects and renegotiate pricing with our existing customers. Furthermore, to ease inflationary pressure on our costs, we implemented new controls over our purchasing process and raw material pricing by adopting a new budgetary control system to monitor our fixed costs and continued improvements to our manufacturing process to decrease labor cost and improve manufacturing efficiency.

The economic conditions our subsidiaries faced in recent years, made it impossible for our subsidiaries to pay dividends to our U.S. parent company, which is dependent upon such dividends to meet its financial obligations. Relevant PRC statutory laws and regulations permit payments of dividends by the Company's PRC subsidiaries only out of the subsidiary's retained earnings, if any, as determined in accordance with PRC accounting standards and regulations. Further, the Company's PRC subsidiaries are required to take certain reserves as detailed in Note 18 to our financial statements. As a result, we sought alternative sources of capital for our U.S. parent company. On July 27, 2012, we entered into a secured, revolving credit facility with Northtech Holdings Inc., a British Virgin Islands business corporation owned by certain members of our former management, James Wang, Rhett Wang and Wen Sha. Jane Ai, our Corporate Secretary, is also a part owner of Northtech. As amended on December 21, 2012, the Credit Agreement provides for borrowings of up to \$2,500,000 with any amounts borrowed maturing on April 30, 2014. Borrowings under the Credit Agreement are secured by 55% of the equity interest in each of our wholly, directly-owned subsidiaries and are repayable, at our option, in shares of our common stock. On December 21, 2012, we repaid \$1,300,000 of the \$1,384,455 outstanding under the Credit Agreement with 1,300,000 restricted shares of our common stock, approximately 22.67% of our total issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock, as authorized by the Credit Agreement and approved by our shareholders. On June 25, 2013, the Board approved second amendment to the credit and security agreement and on August 23, 2013, we entered into second amendment to the credit and security agreement with Northtech, which redefined the "base rate", and adjusted the base rate to 10% annually, compounded quarterly, effective January 1, 2013. On March 26, 2014, we gave notice to Northtech pursuant to the terms of the Credit and Security Agreement between the Company and Northtech, dated July 27, 2012, as amended, extending the maturity date on the Credit Agreement from April 30, 2014 to January 3, 2015 (see Note 15).

On December 30, 2013, we closed the transaction contemplated by the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement dated October 10, 2013, whereby the buyers purchased 40% of the Company's equity interests in the following PHE segment subsidiaries: SmartHeat Taiyu (Shenyang) Energy; SmartHeat Siping Beifang Energy Technology Co., Ltd.; SmartHeat (Shenyang Energy Equipment) Co. Ltd.; Hohot Ruicheng Technology Co., Ltd.; and Urumchi XinRui Technology Limited Liability Company (collectively, the "Target Companies"). The purchase price was RMB 5,000,000. Urumchi XinRui was 46% owned by SmartHeat US parent company.

We retain an option to repurchase the equity interests of the Target Companies from the buyers at a purchase price of RMB 5,600,000 which terminated on February 28, 2014. In the event we do not exercise the option to repurchase the equity interest, the buyers shall have the option to purchase an additional 40% equity interest in the Target Companies for an additional purchase price of RMB 6,000,000. We did not exercise the option to repurchase the equity interest of the Target Companies and such option was terminated on February 28, 2014. On March 27, 2014, the buyers gave notice of their intent to exercise their option to purchase the additional 40% equity interest upon satisfaction of the terms and conditions set forth in the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement, including, without limitation the approval of our shareholders prior to completion of the sale. In the event such approval is not obtained, the buyers may terminate the Equity Interest Purchase Agreement. Should the buyers exercise their option to purchase the additional 40% equity

interest, and the Company's shareholders approve the sale, we have the option to require the Buyers to purchase the remaining 20% equity interest for a purchase price of RMB 2,500,000.

Table of Contents

Significant Accounting Policies

While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements, we believe the following accounting policies are the most critical to aid you in fully understanding and evaluating this management discussion and analysis.

Basis of Presentation

Our financial statements are prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the U.S., or U.S. GAAP.

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of SmartHeat's U.S. parent and its subsidiaries, Taiyu, SanDeKe, SmartHeat Siping, Jinhui, SmartHeat Investment, SmartHeat Energy, SmartHeat Trading, SmartHeat Heat Exchange, SmartHeat Germany and SmartHeat Pump. All significant inter-company accounts and transactions were eliminated in consolidation.

In preparing the financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP, management makes estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements, as well as the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Significant estimates, required by management, include the recoverability of long-lived assets, allowance for doubtful accounts, and the reserve for obsolete and slow-moving inventories. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Accounts Receivable

We maintain reserves for potential credit losses on accounts receivable. Management reviews the composition of accounts receivable and analyzes historical bad debts, customer concentrations, customer credit worthiness, current economic trends and changes in customer payment patterns to evaluate the adequacy of these reserves. Accounts receivable are net of unearned interest. Unearned interest represents imputed interest on accounts receivable with due dates over one year from the invoice date discounted at our borrowing rate for the year. Based on historical collection activity, we had bad debt allowances of \$55.33 million and \$48.25 million at March 31, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively.

Revenue Recognition

Our revenue recognition policies are in compliance with SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin ("SAB") 104 (codified in Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") Topic 605). Sales revenue is recognized when PHEs, heat meters and HPs are delivered, and for PHE Units when customer acceptance occurs, the price is fixed or determinable, no other significant obligations of ours exist and collectability is reasonably assured. Payments received before all of the relevant criteria for revenue recognition are recorded as unearned revenue under "Advance from customers."

Our agreements with our customers generally provide that 30% of the purchase price is due upon placement of an order, 30% upon delivery and 30% upon installation and acceptance of the equipment after customer testing. As a common practice in the heating manufacturing business in China, payment of the final 10% of the purchase price is due no later than the termination date of the standard warranty period, which ranges from 3 to 24 months from the acceptance date. Due to the slowdown of the Chinese economy and tightened monetary policy, and in order to attract and retain customers, the Company's subsidiaries have adjusted their contract and payment terms on a case-by-case

basis to permit for more flexible and longer payment terms.

Our standard warranty is provided to all customers and is not considered an additional service; rather, it is an integral part of the product sale. We believe the existence of the standard warranty in a sales contract does not constitute a deliverable in the arrangement and thus there is no need to apply the EITF 00-21 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 605-25) separation and allocation model for a multiple deliverable arrangement. SFAS 5 (codified in FASB ASC Topic 450) specifically addresses the accounting for standard warranties and neither SAB 104 nor EITF 00-21 supersedes SFAS 5. We believe accounting for our standard warranty pursuant to SFAS 5 does not impact revenue recognition because the cost of honoring the warranty can be reliably estimated.

Table of Contents

We charge for after-sales services provided after the expiration of the warranty period, with after-sales services mainly consisting of cleaning PHEs and repairing and exchanging parts. We recognize such revenue when service is provided. For the three months ended March 31, 2014 and 2013, revenue from after-sales services after the expiration of the warranty period was \$46,244 and \$81,630, respectively.

Foreign Currency Translation and Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The functional currency of our subsidiaries in China is RMB. The functional currency of SmartHeat Germany, our German subsidiary, is EUR. For financial reporting purposes, RMB and EUR were translated into USD as the reporting currency. Assets and liabilities are translated at the exchange rate in effect at the balance sheet date. Revenues and expenses are translated at the average rate of exchange prevailing during the reporting period. Translation adjustments arising from the use of different exchange rates from period to period are included as a component of stockholders' equity as "Accumulated other comprehensive income." Gains and losses resulting from foreign currency transactions are included in income. There was no significant fluctuation in exchange rate for the conversion of RMB to USD after the balance sheet date.

We use Statement of Financial Accounting Standards ("SFAS") No. 130, "Reporting Comprehensive Income" (codified in FASB ASC Topic 220). Comprehensive income is comprised of net income and all changes to the statements of stockholders' equity, except those due to investments by shareholders, changes in paid-in capital and distributions to shareholders.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-01, Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323), Accounting for Investments in Qualified Affordable Housing Projects. The objective of this Update is to provide guidance on accounting for investments by a reporting entity in flow-through limited liability entities that manage or invest in affordable housing projects that qualify for the low-income housing tax credit. The amendments in this Update permit reporting entities to make an accounting policy election to account for their investments in qualified affordable housing projects using the proportional amortization method if certain conditions are met. The amendments in this Update should be applied retrospectively to all periods presented. A reporting entity that uses the effective yield method to account for its investments in qualified affordable housing projects before the date of adoption may continue to apply the effective yield method for those preexisting investments. The amendments in this Update are effective for public business entities for annual periods and interim reporting periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Company's financial statements.

In January 2014, FASB issued, Accounting Standards Update 2014-05, Service Concession Arrangements (Topic 853), The objective of this Update is to specify that an operating entity should not account for a service concession arrangement within the scope of this Update as a lease in accordance with Topic 840, Leases. Service concession arrangements may become more prevalent in the United States as public-sector entities seek alternative ways to provide public services on a more efficient and cost-effective basis. The amendments apply to an operating entity of a service concession arrangement entered into with a public-sector entity grantor when the arrangement meets certain conditions. The amendments in this Update should be applied on a modified retrospective basis to service concession arrangements that exist at the beginning of an entity's fiscal year of adoption. The modified retrospective approach requires the cumulative effect of applying this Update to arrangements existing at the beginning of the period of adoption to be recognized as an adjustment to the opening retained earnings balance for the annual period of adoption. The amendments are effective for a public business entity for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2014. The adoption of this ASU will not affect the Company's financial statements.

Table of Contents

Results of Operations

Three months ended March 31, 2014 Compared to the Three months ended March 31, 2013

The following table sets forth the consolidated results of our operations for the periods indicated as a percentage of net sales, certain columns may not add due to rounding.

	2014		2013	
	\$	% of Sales	\$	% of Sales
Sales	\$ 4,959,966		\$ 6,168,431	
Cost of sales	5,363,957	108%	8,945,191	145%
Gross loss	(403,991)	(8)%	(2,776,760)	(45)%
Operating expenses	13,304,903	268%	10,036,338	163%
Loss from operations	(13,708,894)	(276)%	(12,813,098)	(208)%
Non-operating expenses, net	(152,054)	(3)%	(77,962)	(1)%
Income tax benefit	(14,536)	0.3%	(22,444)	0.4%
Noncontrolling interest	(4,770,467)	(96)%	(44,742)	(1)%
Net Loss to SmartHeat Inc.	\$ (9,075,945)	(183)%	\$ (12,823,874)	(208)%

The following table sets forth the results of our operations for our PHE and heat meter segment for the periods indicated as a percentage of net sales, certain columns may not add due to rounding.

	2014		2013	
	\$	% of Sales	\$	% of Sales
Sales	\$ 4,385,142		\$ 5,671,793	
Cost of sales	4,856,759	111%	8,680,737	153%
Gross loss	(471,617)	(11)%	(3,008,944)	(53)%
Operating expenses	11,577,866	264%	8,388,498	148%
Loss from operations	(12,049,483)	(275)%	(11,397,442)	(201)%
Non-operating expenses, net				